## RВЛ

## User Manual

## CDP6805 CMOS Series Microcomputer/Microprocessor



# User Manual for the RCA CMOS CDP6805-Series Microcomputers and Microprocessors 

Solid |Somerville, NJ • Brussels • Paris • London State Hamburg • Sao Paulo - Hong Kong

Information furnished by RCA is believed to be accurate and reliable. However, no responsibility is assumed by RCA for its use; nor for any infringements of patents or other rights of third parties which may result from its use. No license is granted by implication or otherwise under any patent or patent rights of RCA.

## Trademark(s) ${ }^{\circledR}$ Registered

Marca(s) Registrada(s)

## Copyright 1985 by RCA Corporation

(All rights reserved under Pan-American Copyright Convention)

## Foreword

The RCA CDP6805-Series Microcomputers (MCUs) and Microprocessors (MPUs) consist of the CDP6805E2 and CDP6805E3 MPUs and the CDP6805F2, CDP6805G2, CDP68HC05C4 and CDP68HC05D2 MCUs. This User Manual provides the system designer with a detailed guide to the CDP 6805 -Series, describing the architecture and providing a set of simple, easy-to-use programming instructions. Examples are given to illustrate the operation and usage of each instruction. The CDP6805E2/E3 MPUs contain an 8-bit Arithmetic Logic Unit (ALU), accumulator, program counter, index register, stack pointer, condition code register, instruction decoder and timing and control logic. These MPUs are identical except that the directly accessible address space has been increased from 8 K bytes on the E 2 to 64 K bytes on the E3.
The microcomputer versions CDP6805F2/G2 and CDP68HC05C4/D2 contain an on-chip oscillator, CPU, RAM, ROM, I/O and timer. The on-chip RAM permits these devices to operate without external memory. The addressing modes and register-like memory operations use this RAM to the fullest extent possible.

The CDP6805-Series features parallel I/O capability with each pin programmable as an input or output. The external interrupt input, and the capability for multiple nesting of subroutines and interrupts, are features usually found only on much more powerful architectures. These features permit the CDP6805Series MCUs to be used in applications usually considered too complex for microcomputers. The external interrupt and counter/timer interrupt are vectored to different service routine addresses, which greatly simplifies interrupt programming. It also speeds execution of interrupt routines by eliminating software interrupt polling.

The CDP6805-Series devices have an on-chip counter/timer which greatly simplifies software development. The CDP6805E2/E3/F2/G2 have 8-bit counter/timers while the CDP $68 \mathrm{HC} 05 \mathrm{C} 4 / \mathrm{D} 2$ have 16 -bit counter/timers. The counter/timer can be used for timekeeping, measuring and generating pulses, and counting external events. The timer can also be set to "wake up" the MPU from the power-saving WAIT mode.
The lowest address spaces are reserved for memorymapped I/O registers. The programmer may take full advantage of the versatile addressing modes and the register-like RAM operations of the family. User ROM sizes range from zero to greater than 4 K bytes for the MPU. A self-check ROM is available on the CDP6805F2/G2 and on the CDP68HC05C4/D2. The ROM area used in the self-check operation is not included in the published ROM sizes. The user can get the entire ROM space for his program. A small portion of ROM is located in page zero (the direct page) to facilitate more efficient access to look-up tables using all available addressing modes. This ROM can be used for program storage as well.

The CDP6805 family includes types with either 64, 96, 112 or 176 bytes of on-chip RAM located in page zero. Package-size options permit as many as four full 8 -bit bidirectional I/O ports. Each pin is defined under software control as an input or output by loading a data-direction register.
The CDP68HC05C4/D2 each have a built-in Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) which is used to allow expansion while conserving I/O lines. In addition, the CDP68HC05C4 has a full UART-type internal Serial Communications Interface (SCI).

## Table of Contents

Page
Foreword ..... 3
Introduction ..... 7
General ..... 7
Architecture ..... 8
Addressing Modes ..... 8
Specific Features ..... 8
Hardware ..... 9
Comparison of CDP6805 Family Members ..... 10
Software Description ..... 12
Register Set ..... 12
Accumulator (A) ..... 13
Index Register (X) ..... 13
Program Counter (PC) ..... 14
Stack Pointer (SP) ..... 14
Condition Code Register (CC) ..... 15
Addressing Modes ..... 17
Inherent Addressing Mode ..... 17
Immediate Addressing Mode ..... 19
Extended Addressing Mode ..... 19
Direct Addressing Mode ..... 20
Indexed Addressing Mode ..... 21
Relative Addressing Mode ..... 24
Bit Manipulation Addressing Mode ..... 24
Instruction Set Overview ..... 28
Register/ Memory Instructions ..... 28
Read/Modify/Write Instructions ..... 28
Control Instructions ..... 29
Bit Manipulation Instructions ..... 29
Branch Instructions ..... 29
Software Applications ..... 30
Serial I/O Software for RS-232 ..... 30
Keypad Scan Routine ..... 33
Stock Handling ..... 34
Block Move ..... 35
DAA (Decimal Adjust Accumulator) ..... 35
Multiply ..... 36
Divide ..... 39
Page
Hardware Features ..... 42
Temporary Storage (RAM) ..... 43
Permanent Storage (ROM) ..... 43
Oscillator ..... 43
Resets ..... 43
Interrupts ..... 44
Stop ..... 47
Wait ..... 48
I/O Ports ..... 48
Timer Description ..... 49
Counter Register ..... 51
Output Compare Register ..... 51
Input Capture Register ..... 53
Timer Control Register (TCR) ..... 53
Timer Status Register (TSR) ..... 54
Serial Communications Interface (SCI) ..... 55
Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) ..... 64
CDP6805E2/E3 Microprocessor (MPU) External Bus Description ..... 73
Self-Check ..... 74
Instruction Set Detailed Definition ..... 76
Nomenclature ..... 76
Appendix A - CDP6805 CMOS Family Compatability with MC6800 ..... 95
Appendix B - Instruction Set Alphabetical Listing ..... 97
Appendix C - Instruction Set Functional Listing ..... 99
Appendix D - Instruction Set Numerical Listing ..... 103
Appendix E- Instruction Set Cycle-by-Cycle Operation Summary ..... 108
Appendix F - Instruction Set OPCODE Map ..... 114
Appendix G - Address Maps for the CDP6805 CMOS Family ..... 116
Appendix H - ASCII Hexadecimal Code
Conversion Chart ..... 122

## Introduction

## General

The continuing technological evolution in microprocessors and microcomputers has resulted in larger, more complex, and more powerful devices which contain characteristics of both mini and mainframe computers. The technological evolution of the MC6800 to the M6809 Family and the 16-bit MC68000 is a clear example of devices which evolved upward from the mini and mainframe computer architecture. The experience gained during this upward evolution has greatly enhanced the expertise needed to design more powerful low- and mid-range devices. By using the architectural characteristics of the mini and mainframe computers, the microprocessor/microcomputer hardware and software becomes regular and versatile, yet simple.

The demanding requirements of the mid-range con-trol-oriented microprocessor market (low cost) can be met with the CDP6805 CMOS Family of microcomputers (MCU) and microprocessors (MPU). The CDP6805 Family is the first to provide the software and hardware capabilities of more advanced computers to the controller market. Previously, designers and manufacturers were required to choose between "no processor at all" or a processor that functioned more like a calculator than a computer.

Control-oriented microprocessors have evolved from two different bases: calculator-based and computer-based. The calculator-based design was at first considered as a natural building block for controllers because, most often, a controller was required to be a complete self-contained unit. However, calculator-based control-oriented microprocessors use a split memory architecture containing separate data paths between the CPU and peripherals (memory or $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ or registers). In addition, calculatorbased I/O, display, and keypad were separated from program and data storage memory. Because of this, separate address maps were required which forced the inclusion of many special-purpose instructions and resulted in an irregular architecture. As a result, these calculator-based devices required that hardware and software designers remember and consider many special cases in order to perform any task. Thus, the
software and hardware became very random, irregular, and difficult to update.

The computer-based design led to another group of processors, like the MC6800, which contain many features of large computers. These devices contain a single data bus which allows access to a single address map, eliminating the need for split-memory architecture. In this one-address map design, all I/O, program, and data may be accessed with the same instruction; therefore, there are fewer instructions to remember. The actual number of unique instructions is increased by a variety of addressing modes which define how an instruction accesses any data required for the operation. For example, depending upon which addressing mode is used, the accumulator may be loaded (LDA instruction) with data in six different ways. This effectively provides the programmer with more tools to work with but fewer things to remember. Thus, because of regularity of the architecture, the hardware is regular and can be implemented more efficiently.

All members of the CDP6805 CMOS Family of MCUs and MPUs are designed around a common core which consists of CPU, timer, oscillator, control section (for interrupts and reset), varying amounts of bidirectional I/O lines, and possibly ROM. In addition to this common core, additional items can be added such as additional memory and additional I/O lines. As of the printing of this manual, this versatile common-core design has already provided six different CDP6805 CMOS Family devices. The six different family members allow the user to choose the device best suited for his/her particular application. The increased number of devices could preclude paying for a supplied feature that is not needed or paying extra to externally add a needed feature that is not included.

Information describing I/O options and general operation of the CDP6805 CMOS Family members is included in this chapter. Detailed information concerning device operation is included in the following chapters as well as appendices. Data sheets on the individual processors are another source of information. Chapters discussing hardware and software applications are also included to illustrate some
of the family features and provide a useful tool for the user.

The CDP6805 CMOS Family architecture and instruction set are very similar to that of Motorola's MC6800. Any programmer who has worked with the MC6800 can attain equivalent proficiency with the CDP6805 CMOS Family in a relatively short time. In some respects the CDP6805 CMOS Family is more powerful than the MC6800 (depending upon the application) as a result of architecture optimization. Appendix A summarizes the architectural and instruction set differences between the CDP6805 CMOS and M6800 Families.

## Architecture

The CDP6805 CMOS Family architecture has been optimized for controller applications rather than general purpose data processing operations. Several features contribute to this optimization:

## Instruction Set

The instruction set used with the CDP6805 CMOS Family is specifically designed for byte-efficient program storage. Byte efficiency permits a maximum amount of program function to be implemented within a finite amount of on-chip ROM. Improved ROM efficiency allows the CDP6805 CMOS Family to be used in applications where other processors might not perform the task in the available ROM space.

More features may be included in applications where ROM space is more than adequate. In some cases the user might wish to include programs for more than one application. In such cases the appropriate program could be selected by the power-up initialization program. The ability to nest subroutines, the addition of true bit test and bit manipulation instructions, the multi-function instructions, and the versatile addressing modes all contribute to byte efficiency.

Superficial comparisons of the number of bytes per instruction for the CDP6805 CMOS Family, when compared to other machines in this class, can be very misleading. A single CDP6805 Family instruction occupying 2 or 3 bytes accomplishes as much real programming work as several single byte instructions, or a subroutine, would accomplish in many other processors.

The bit test and bit manipulation instructions permit the program to:
branch on bit set
branch on bit clear
set bit
clear bit.
These instructions operate on any individual bit in the first 256 address spaces (page zero). As such, the bit manipulations access $/ / O$ pins, RAM bits, and ROM bits.

In the CDP6805 CMOS Family, a page consists of 256 consecutive memory locations. Page zero includes the lowest-numbered 256 memory addresses ( $\$ 00$ through $\$ F F$ ), page one the next 256 memory addresses ( $\$ 100$ through $\$ 1 F F$ ), etc. An efficient use of pages zero and one would be for storage of tables because these two pages are easily accessed by the indexed addressing mode.

## Addressing Modes

One of the chief measures of the effectiveness of a computer architecture is its ability to access data. The CDP6805 CMOS Family has several memory addressing modes. They include immediate, direct, and extended, plus three distinct indexed modes. The programmer is thus given the opportunity to optimize the code to the task. The indexed addressing modes permit conversion tables, jump tables, and data tables to be located anywhere in the address space. The use of tables is an important tool in controller-type applications.

Efficient addressing methods are coupled with instructions which manipulate memory without disturbing the program registers. Thus, RAM may be used for the same functions that other processors use general purpose registers (increment, decrement, clear, complement, test, etc.). The CDP6805 CMOS Family members have a very versatile, efficient, and easy-to-use I/O structure. All microcomputer I/O function registers are memory mapped into the first processor addresses. Advantage is thus taken of the efficient addressing modes, the many memory reference instructions, and the use of RAM (or I/O registers) as general purpose registers. As an example, there are 64 unique instructions which permit the programmer to modify an I/O port. The programmer's problem is not so much how to accomplish a given I/O task, but rather to choose the most effective method from the many methods available. In addition, as with other 6800 Family I/O devices, most CDP6805 CMOS Family I/O pins are individually programmed as inputs or outputs under software control.

## Specific Features

The unique properties of CMOS technology (Complementary MOS with both P - and N -channel devices) are increasingly attractive to the needs of advanced microcomputer technology. Some applications are simply not feasible with PMOS, NMOS, or HMOS microcomputers.

Features and operating characteristics of the RCA CDP6805 Family of microcomputers and microprocessors which make them ideal choices include:

- Maximum power consumption of CMOS parts ranges from $1 / 15$ to $1 / 200$ of that of equivalent HMOS parts.
- The low power consumption of CMOS is important in several casses of applications, including:

1) Portable equipment - hand-held and other portable units operating from self-contained batteries.
2) Battery back-up - CMOS is appropriate in AC-powered applications when some or all system functions must continue during power outages. A small, rechargeable battery keeps a CMOS MCU operable.
3) Storage batteries - Automotive and telephone equipment operate from large batteries. Automobile battery drain must be low when the engine is not running. Telephones must operate independently of AC power.
4) Heat dissipation - Packaging constraints sometimes preclude dissipating electronics-generated heat, or the heat is costly to dissipate. In addition, dissipation of heat directly affects device reliability.
5) Power costs - The cost of electricity to power the equipment becomes a significant factor in calculating the total life-cycle cost of equipment which operates continually.

- Operation over a wide range of supply voltages. CMOS is used where the supply voltage fluctuates, such as in battery-powered equipment; or if line
power is available, a low-cost, loosely regulated supply may be used.
- Fully static CMOS circuitry, no minimum clock frequency. CMOS microcomputers may be operated at any clock frequency less than the guaranteed maximum. This feature may be used to conserve power, because power consumption increases with higher clock frequencies. The CDP6805 Family features STOP and WAIT instructions to place the CPU in low power consumption modes. Static operation may also be advantageous during product development.


## Hardware

Every CDP6805 CMOS Family microcomputer or microprocessor contains hardware common to all versions, plus a combination of options unique to a particular version. There are also several differences among family members of which potential users should be aware.

## Hardware Common To All Devices

Figure 1 details the hardware functional blocks common to all CDP6805 CMOS Family devices.

The central processor unit (CPU) contains the 8bit arithmetic-logic unit (ALU), accumulator, pro-


Figure 1-CDP6805 CMOS Family Basic Microcomputer Block Diagram
gram counter, index register, stack pointer, condition code register, instruction decoder, and timing and control logic. These elements resemble the M6800 Family of microprocessors which reflect the CDP6805 CMOS Family heritage.

The CDP6805 CMOS Family has on-chip RAM, permitting the microcomputer versions to operate without external memory. The addressing modes and register-like memory operations use this RAM to the fullest extent possible.

All microcomputers in the family (CDP6805F2, CDP6805G2, CDP68HC05C4, and CDP68HC05D2) have on-chip user ROM and self-check programs.

Every member of the family has an on-chip oscillator. The oscillator on the microcomputers is maskselectable as either crystal input or RC network.

Parallel I/O capability, with pins programmable as input or output, is built into every unit.

The external interrupt input, and the capability for multiple nesting of subroutines and interrupts, are features usually found on much more powerful architectures. They permit a CDP6805 CMOS Family MCU to be used in projects usually considered too complex for microcomputers.

A feature which greatly simplifies software development and extends the capability of a microcomputer is an on-chip timer/counter. This counter and its prescaler can be programmed for innumerable functions. It can generate an interrupt at software-selected intervals. The timer/counter can also be used for timekeeping, measuring and generating pulses. The timer can be set to "wake-up" the processor from the power-saving WAIT mode, and those parts with an external timer input can be used to count external events.

The external interrupt and timer/counter interrupt are vectored to different service routine addresses. This greatly simplifies interrupt programming. It also speeds execution of interrupt routines by eliminating software interrupt polling, for determining the source of the interrupt.

The first processor addresses are reserved for memory-mapped I/O registers. The programmer of the CDP6805 CMOS Family may take full advantage of the versatile addressing modes and the register-like RAM operations of the Family.

## Comparison of CDP6805 Family Members

This manual covers the six members of the CDP6805 CMOS Family: CDP6805E2, CDP6805E3, CDP6805F2, CDP6805G2, CDP68HC05C4, and CDP68HC05D2. The features of each are as follows:

- The CDP6805E2 and CDP6805E3 are 40-pin microprocessors. They feature, on-chip, 112 bytes of RAM, an oscillator, bidirectional I/O lines, and an 8-bit timer with software-programmable 7bit prescaler. The CDP6805E2 and CDP6805E3 are identical except that the directly accessible address space has been increased from 8 K on the E2 to 64 K on the E3. To maintain the 40 -pin package of the E2, the three additional required address lines were taken from the three most significant bits of Port A. Consequently the CDP6805E2 has 16 bidirectional I/O lines and the CDP6805E3 has 13 bidirectional I/O lines. Both parts have a multiplexed address and data bus.
- The CDP6805F2, CDP6805G2, CDP68HC05C4, and CDP68HC05D2 are microcomputers.
- The CDP6805F2 is a 28 -pin microcomputer featuring, on-chip, 64 bytes of RAM, 1089 bytes of ROM, an oscillator, 16 bidirectional I/O lines, 4 unidirectional input lines, and an 8-bit timer with software-programmable 7-bit prescaler.
- The CDP6805G2 is a 40-pin microcomputer featuring, on-chip, 112 bytes of RAM, 2106 bytes of ROM, an oscillator, 32 bidirectional I/O lines, and an 8-bit timer with software-programmable 7bit prescaler.
- The CDP68HC05C4 and CDP68HC05D2 are 40pin microcomputers. In addition to the on-chip RAM, ROM, oscillator, and bidirectional I/O lines found on the other members of the family, the CDP68HC05C4 and CDP68HC05D2 contain a serial peripheral interface and a 16 -bit programmable timer. In addition, the CDP 68 HC 05 C 4 features a serial communications interface (SCI), and the CDP68HC05D2 features software-programmable open drain PORT A outputs, PORT B interrupt, wire "OR" mode for the SPI, softwareprogrammable external oscillator timer input, and an on-chip timer oscillator.

Refer to Table I for a list of the members of the CDP6805 CMOS Family and their respective features.

Table I - Comparison Chart for CDP6805 Family Members

| FEATURES | CDP6805E2 | CDP6805E3 | CDP6805F2 | CDP6805G2 | CDP68HC05C4 | CDP68HC05D2 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Technology | CMOS | CMOS | CMOS | CMOS | CMOS | CMOS |
| Number of Pins | 40 | 40 | 28 | 40 | 40 | 40 |
| On-Chip RAM (bytes) | 112 | 112 | 64 | 112 | 176 | 96 |
| External Address Space | 8K | 64K | - | - | - | - |
| On-Chip User ROM (bytes) .. | 0 | 0 | 1089 | 2106 | 4160 | 2176 |
| Bidirectional I/O Lines | 16 | 13 | 16 | 32 | 24 | 24 |
| Unidirectional I/O Lines | 0 | 0 | 4 inputs | 0 | 1 input | 1 input |
| Timer Size | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 16 | 16 |
| Serial Peripheral Interface | no | no | no | no | yes | yes |
| Serial Communications Interface | no | no | no | no | yes | no |
| Interrupts | External, Timer, SWI | External, Timer, SWI | External, Timer, SWI | External Timer, SWI | External, Timer, SCI, SPI, SWI | External, Timer, SPI, Port B SWI |
| Self Check Mode | no | no | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| On-Chip Oscillator | Crystal | Crystal | RC or Crystal | RC or Crystal | RC or Crystal | RC or Crystal |
| On-Chip Timer Oscillator | no | no | no | no | no | yes |
| Typical Full-Speed Operating Power at 5 V | 35 mW | 35 mW | 10 mW | 15 mW | 25 mW | 25 mW |
| Typical WAIT Mode Power at 5 V | 5 mW | 5 mW | 3 mW | 4 mW | 7.5 mW | 7.5 mW |
| Typical STOP Mode Power at 5 V | $25 \mu \mathrm{~W}$ | $25 \mu \mathrm{~W}$ | $25 \mu \mathrm{~W}$ | $25 \mu \mathrm{~W}$ | $5 \mu \mathrm{~W}$ | $5 \mu \mathrm{~W}$ |

# Software Description 

## Introduction

During the early 1970's, microprocessors (MPU) and microcomputers (MCU) helped ease the shortage of hardware designers by providing the hardware with more intelligence. However, because the power of any MPU or MCU is the result of the software programs, a shortage of software engineers was created. Thus, as MPUs and MCUs reduced hardware costs, software development costs rose. As a result, the system designer of today must carefully weigh the software and support costs of his/her system. Processors such as those of the CDP6805 CMOS Family, which are designed to include the programming features inherited from minicomputers, require less effort from the programmer and make system design much more efficient. The importance of "user-friendly" software in mini and mainframe computers is a widely accepted fact. Easy-to-use software is the key to writing and maintaining efficient programs.

The CDP6805 CMOS Family architecture is based upon the Von Neumann model which places all data, program, and I/O spaces into a single address map. Thus, because only a single address map must be supported, very few special-purpose instructions are necessary in the CDP6805 CMOS Family instruction set. The overall result is a small, very regular, and easy-to-remember instruction set

A regular instruction set is symmetrical in that, for most instructions, there is a complement instruction. Some of these instructions (plus complements) are listed below.

| LDA | - STA | Load and Store |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| INC | - DEC | Increment and Decrement |
| BEQ - BNE | Branch if Equal and Branch if |  |
|  |  | Not Equal |
| ADD - SUB | Add and Subtract |  |
| AND - ORA | Logic AND and Logic OR |  |

BCLR - BSET Bit Clear and Bit Set ROR - ROL Rotate Right and Rotate Left JSR - RTS Jump-To-Subroutine and Return-From-Subroutine

The symmetry provided by the CDP6805 CMOS Family instruction set means that the programmer need only remember 30 to 40 separate instructions to know the entire instruction set. The CDP6805 CMOS family has at least 61 instructions in its instruction set. The CDP68HC05C4 and CDP68HC05D2 microcomputers have an additional instruction to MULTIPLY.

The instruction set is expanded by the use of a variety of versatile addressing modes. The addressing modes, which are part of the minicomputer heritage of the CDP6805 CMOS Family, expand the instruction set by allowing the programmer to specify how the data for a particular instruction is to be fetched. As illustrated in the Opcode Map of Appendix A, the $61 / 62$ separate instructions, enhanced by the seven addressing modes, expand into 209/210 opcodes; however, the programmer need only remember $68 / 69$ items ( $61 / 62$ instructions plus seven addressing modes) instead of 209/210.

## Register Set

Each CDP6805 CMOS Family member contains five registers as shown in Figure 2. The accumulator (A) and index register (X) are used as working program registers. The condition code register (CC) is used to indicate the current status of the processor program. The program counter (PC) contains the memory address of the next instruction that the processor is to execute. The stack pointer (SP) register contains the address of the next free stack location. For more information concerning each register, see the section below describing that register.


NOTE: The stack pointer and program counter size is determined by the memory size that the family member device can access; e.g., an 8 K memory map requires a 13-bit stack pointer and program counter.

Figure 2 - CDP6805 CMOS Family Register Architecture

## Accumulator (A)

The A register is a general purpose 8 -bit register that is used by the program for arithmetic calculations and data manipulations. The full set of read/ modify/write instructions operates on the A register. The accumulator is used in the register/memory instructions for data manipulation and arithmetic calculation. Refer to the Instruction Set Summary discussion later in this section for information about the read/modify/write and register/memory instruction. An example using the accumulator to add the contents of two memory locations is shown below.

| B6 | 50 | LDA $\$ 50$ | Load accumulator with <br> contents of memory <br> location $\$ 50$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| BB | 87 | ADD $\$ 87$ | Add the contents of <br> memory location $\$ 87$ to <br> the accumulator |
| B7 | 3C | STA $\$ 3 C$ | Store the accumulator <br> contents in memory <br> location \$3C |

## Index Register (X)

The index register is used in the indexed modes of addressing or used as an auxiliary accumulator. It is an 8-bit register and can be loaded either directly or from memory, have its contents stored in memory, or its contents compared to memory.

In indexed instructions, the X register provides an 8 -bit value that is added to an instruction-provided value, to create an effective address. The indexed addressing mode is further described in the Addressing Modes paragraph of this section.

The X register is also used in the CDP6805 CMOS Family for limited calculations and data manipulation. The full set of read/modify/write instructions operates on the X register as well as the accumulator. Instruction sequences which do not use the X register for indexed addressing may use X as a temporary storage cell, or accumulator.

The following example shows a typical use of the index register in one of the indexed addressing modes. The example performs a block move that is BCNT in length.

|  | LDX | \#BCNT | Load Length into Index Register |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| REPEAT | LDA | SOURCE,X | Load Data from Memory at Source+Contents $X$ into Accumulator |
|  | STA | DESTIN,X | Store Data from Accumulator into Memory at Destination+Contents of $X$ |
| DECX |  | Set Up to Point to Another Cell, Also Control Count |  |
| BNE | REPEAT | Repeat if More to Transfer |  |

The X register is also useful in counting events because it can be incremented or decremented. The INCX or DECX instructions can be used to control the count. By either decrementing or incrementing the X register, starting at a known value, and then comparing the X register contents to the contents of

| AE | FF | DBNCE | LDX |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $5 A$ |  | AGAIN | DECX |
| 26 | FD |  | BNE |

## Program Counter (PC)

The PC contains the memory address of the next instruction that is to be fetched and executed. Normally, the PC points to the next sequential instruction; however, the PC may be altered by interrupts or certain instructions. During a valid interrupt, the PC is loaded with the appropriate interrupt vector. The jump and branch instructions modify the PC so that the next instruction to be executed is not necessarily the next instruction in physical memory. The actual size of the PC depends upon the size of the address space of the individual family members and currently ranges from 11 to 16 bits.

## Stack Pointer (SP)

The stack array (stack) is an area of memory in RAM used for the temporary storage of important information. It is a sequence of registers (memory locations) used in a last-in-first-out (LIFO) fashion. A stack pointer is used to specify where the last-in entry is located or where the next-in entry will go. Because the stack must be written to, as well as read, it must be located in RAM.

Interrupts and subroutines make use of the stack to temporarily save important data. The SP is used to automatically store the return address (two bytes of the PC) on subroutine calls and to automatically store all registers (five bytes; A, X, PC and CC) during interrupts. The saved registers may be interleaved on the stack (nested), thus allowing for: (1) nesting of subroutines and interrupts, (2) subroutines to be interrupted, and (3) interrupts to call subroutines. The nesting of subroutines and interrupts can only occur to some maximum amount, which is described below.

Because the CDP6805 is a family of devices, the
a memory location (or a specific number), a loop can be ended or a branch taken after a certain number of events.

The following routine uses the index register as a counter for a keypad debounce routine.

$$
\text { \#CNT } \quad \text { CNT }=255 \text { in this example }
$$

AGAIN
actual size of the stack pointer may vary with memory size of the particular family member (see appropriate data sheets). But from the programmer's perspective, the stack pointers all appear similar on the different members. Both the hardware $\overline{\text { RESET }}$ pin and the reset stack pointer (RSP) instruction reset the stack pointer to its maximum value ( $\$ 7 \mathrm{~F}$ on the CDP6805E2/E3/F2/G2, \$FF on the CDP68HC05C4/D2). The stack pointer on the CDP6805 CMOS Family always points to the next free location on the stack. Each "push" decrements the SP while each "pull" increments it ("push" and "pull" are not available as user instructions in the CDP6805 CMOS Family).

Nested subroutine calls and interrupts must not underflow the SP. The usable stack length will vary between devices. In the CDP6805 CMOS Family, the usable stack length is $2^{n}$ (where $n=$ number of bits in the stack pointer). When the allowable stack length is exceeded, the SP will wrap around to the top of stack. This condition of stack underflow should be avoided because the previously stacked data will be lost. For a CDP6805 CMOS Family device, with a 6 -bit stack pointer, the calculation is: $2^{6}$ or 64 bytes maximum.

In the CDP6805 CMOS Family, the stack builds in the direction of decreasing address. The SP always points to the next empty location on the stack. The SP is decremented each time a data type is pushed onto the stack and it is incremented each time a data type is pulled from the stack. The SP is only changed during certain operations, and, except for the RSP instruction, it is not under direct software control. During external or power-on reset, or during a reset pointer ( RSP ) instruction, the SP is set to its upper limit (\$7F for the CDP6805E2/E3/F2/G2 and \$FF for the CDP68HC05C4/D2).

The order in which bytes are stored onto and retrieved from the stack is shown in Figure 3. Notice
that the PC has a number of fixed and variable bits. The number of variable bits depends upon the size of the memory available in a particular family member (see Figure 2 for this relationship).


NOTES:

1. Since, in all family devices, the stack pointer decrements during pushes, the PCL is stacked first, followed by the PCH, etc. Pulling from the stack is in the reverse order.
2. In the CDP6805 CMOS Family, PC fixed bits are always clear. The CDP6805E3 has no fixed bits in the program counter.

Figure 3-Stacking Order

## Condition Code Register (CC)

The CDP6805 CMOS Family uses five condition code flag bits, labeled $\mathrm{H}, \mathrm{I}, \mathrm{N}, \mathrm{Z}$, and C , which reside in the 8 -bit CC register. The three MSBs of the CC register are all ones which fill the register to eight bits.

The function of the condition codes is to retain information concerning the results of the last executed data reference instruction. The effect of an instruction on each condition code is shown, together with the instruction, in Appendix B. Any bit or combination of bits, except the I bit, is testable using the conditional branch instructions. See the Addressing Modes section for more information.

CARRY (C). The C bit is set if a carry or borrow out of the 8 -bit ALU occurred during the last arithmetic operation. It is also set during shift, rotate, and bit test instructions.

The C bit is mainly set in one of six ways:

1. It is set during an add instruction if the result of the addition produces a carry out of the 8 -bit ALU (arithmetic logic unit).
2. For subtraction and comparison instructions, it is set when the absolute value of the subtrahend is larger than the absolute value of the minuend. This generally implies a borrow.
3. It is changed during shift and rotate instructions. For these instructions the bit shifted out of the accumulator becomes the C bit.
4. It is set when a SEC instruction is executed.
5. It is set when a COM instruction is executed.
6. It is set if a bit test and branch bit is set.

Two instructions, add with carry (ADC) and subtract with carry (SBC), use the carry bit as part of the instruction. This simplifies the addition or subtraction of numbers that are longer than eight bits.

The carry bit may be tested with various conditional branch instructions.

ZERO ( $\mathbf{Z}$ ). The Z bit is set if the result of the last arithmetic, logical, or data operation is zero. The bit is set only if all eight bits of the result are zero; otherwise, it is cleared.

The Z bit can be used to cause a branch with the $\mathrm{BHI}, \mathrm{BLS}, \mathrm{BNE}$, or BEQ instructions. When the BHI instruction is used, both the C bit and Z bit are used for the branch.

The Z bit can be used to initiate a branch after the A or X contents equal the contents of a memory location. For example, the accumulator can be compared to the contents of a memory location and when the eight resultant bits are all zeros ( Z bit set), a branch would result with the BEQ instruction. Conversely, if the same comparison were made and a BNE instruction were used, a branch would result after each compare unless the eight resultant bits were all zeros ( Z bit set).

NEGATIVE (N). The N bit is set when bit seven of the result of the last data manipulation, arithmetic, or logical operation is set. This indicates that the result of the operation is negative. The N bit is cleared by the CLR and LSR instructions. In all other instructions affecting the N bit, its condition is determined by bit 7 of the result.

The N bit can be used to cause a branch, if it is set, by using the BMI instruction. Likewise, the N bit can be used for a branch, if it cleared, by using the BPL instruction. In one case it is tested for a negative result and in the other it is tested for a positive result.

The N bit can be used to initiate a branch after a comparison of two numbers. For example, the contents of the X register could be compared to the contents of memory location M and a branch taken based on the value of N. In using the CPX instruction, the N bit remains clear and no branch is taken, as long as the X register contents are greater than or equal to the contents of $M$; however, if the $X$ register contents become less than the contents of M , the N bit is set to one and a branch is initiated (using the BMI instruction).

HALF CARRY (H). The H bit is set when a carry occurs between bits 3 and 4 during an ADD or ADC instruction. The half-carry flag may be used in BCD addition subroutines because each binary-coded-decimal digit is contained either in the $0-3$ (least significant) or 4-7 bits. Thus, when the sum of the two least significant BCDs results in a carry out of bit position 3 into bit position 4, the H bit is set. The section on Software Applications describes a routine which uses the H bit to emulate the MC6800 DAA (decimal adjust) instruction.

INTERRUPT MASK (I). When the I bit is set, the external and timer interrupts are masked (disabled). Clearing the I bit allows interrupts to be enabled. If an interrupt occurs while the I bit is set,
the interrupt is latched internally and held until the I bit is cleared. The interrupt vector is then serviced normally.

Except for when an external interrupt ( $\overline{\mathrm{INT}}$ or $\overline{\mathrm{IRQ}})$ is applied, the I bit is controlled by the program instructions. Some program instructions change the I bit explicitly, whereas others cause it to change implicitly. For example, CLI clears the I bit and SEI sets the I bit; however, SWI automatically sets the I
bit as part of the interrupt instruction. The STOP and WAIT instructions in CDP6805 CMOS Family parts also automatically set the I bit as part of instruction. See Interrupts in the Hardware Features section for more information.

NOTE: The SWI instruction and $\overline{\text { RESET }}$ are the only non-maskable interrupts in the CDP6805 CMOS Family.

## Addressing Modes

The power of any computer lies in its ability to access memory. The addressing modes of the processor provide that capability. The CDP6805 CMOS Family has a powerful set of addressing modes.

The addressing modes define the manner in which an instruction is to obtain the data required for its execution. An instruction, because of different addressing modes, may access its operand in one of up-to-five different addressing modes. Consequently, the addressing modes expand the basic 61 CDP6805 CMOS Family instructions into 209 separate operations. Some addressing modes require that the 8 -bit opcode be accompanied by one or two additional bytes. These bytes either contain the data for the operations, the address for the data, or both.

In the addressing mode descriptions which follow, the term "effective address" (EA) is used. The EA is the address in memory from which the argument for an instruction is fetched or stored. In two-operand instructions, such as add to accumulator (ADD), one of the effective operands (the accumulator) is inherent and not considered an addressing mode per se.

Descriptions and examples of the various modes of addressing the CDP6805 CMOS Family are provided in the paragraphs which follow. Several program assembly examples are shown for each mode, and one of the examples is described in detail (ORG, EQU, and FCB are assembler directives and not part of the instruction set). Parentheses are used in these descriptions/examples of the various addressing modes to indicate "the contents of" the location or register referred to; e.g., (PC) indicates the contents of the location pointed to by the PC. The colon symbol (:) indicates a concatenation of bytes. In the following examples, the program counter (PC) is initially assumed to be pointing to the location of the first opcode byte. The first $P C+1$ is the first incremental result and shows that the PC is pointing to the location immediately following the first opcode byte.

The information provided in the program assembly examples uses several symbols to identify the various types of numbers that occur in a program. These symbols include:

1. A blank or no symbol indicates a decimal number.
2. A $\$$ preceding a number indicates it is a hexadecimal number; e.g., $\$ 24$ is 24 in hexadecimal or the equivalent of 36 in decimal.
3. A \# indicates an immediate operand. Therefore the number is found in the location immediately following the opcode.
There are seven different addressing modes used in the CDP6805 CMOS Family, namely: inherent, immediate, direct, extended, indexed, relative, and bit manipulation. The indexed and bit manipulation addressing modes contain additional subdivisions to increase their flexibility; i.e., three subdivisions for the indexed mode and two for bit manipulation. Each of these programming modes is discussed in the paragraphs which follow. The cycle-by-cycle description of each instruction in all possible addressing modes is included in Appendix E. This allows the processor bus activity and instruction operation relationship to be studied.

## Inherent Addressing Mode

In this addressing mode there is no EA (effective address). Inherent address instructions are used when all information required for the instruction is already within the CPU, and no external operands, from memory or the program, are needed. Since all the information necessary to carry out the instruction is contained in the opcode, and no external operands are needed, inherent instructions only require one byte. These one-byte instructions are shown in Appendix C as part of control and read/modify/ write instruction tables.

The following is an example of a subroutine that clears the accumulator and index registers plus the C-bit and then returns. Figure 4 shows an example of the steps required to perform the TAX instruction in the subroutine.

| 05B9 | 4F | CLEAR | CLRA |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 05BA | 97 |  | Clear Accumulator <br> Transfer Accumulator |
| 05BB | 98 |  | Contents to Index <br> Register |
| 05BC 81 |  | RTC | Clear the Carry Bit <br> Return from <br> Subroutine |



Figure 4 - Inherent Addressing Mode Example


Figure 5 - Immediate Addressing Mode Example

## Immediate Addressing Mode

The EA of an immediate mode instruction is the location following the opcode. This mode is used to hold a value or constant which is known at the time the program is written, and which is not changed during program execution. These are two-byte instructions, one for the opcode and one for the immediate data byte. Immediate addressing may be used by any register/memory instructions as shown in Appendix C.
$P C+1 \rightarrow P C$
$E A=P C$
$P C+1 \rightarrow P C$
The following is an example which subtracts 5 from the contents of the accumulator and compares the results to the number 10 . Figure 5 shows an example of the steps required to perform the SUB instruction.

| 05BC B6 4B LDA \$4B | Load Accumulator from |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| RAM location 4B |  |

## Extended Addressing Mode

The EA of an extended mode instruction is contained in the two bytes following the opcode. Extended addressing references any location in the CDP6805 CMOS Family memory space, I/O, RAM, and ROM. The extended addressing mode allows an instruction to access all of memory. Extended addressing mode instructions are three bytes long, a one-byte opcode plus a two-byte address. All register/memory instructions, as shown in Appendix C, can use extended addressing.

```
PC + 1 }->\textrm{PC
EA = (PC):(PC + 1)
PC + 2 }->\textrm{PC
```

The following example loads the contents of a memory location (labeled COUNT) into the index register and then jumps to a subroutine to provide a delay. Figure 6 shows an example of the steps required to determine the EA of the location containing the data to be loaded into the index register.


Figure 6 - Extended Addressing Mode Example

|  |  | 0800 | COUNT | EQU | $\$ 800$ |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | 1200 | DELAY | EQU | $\$ 1200$ |  |
| 0409 | CE | 0800 |  | LDX | COUNT | Load Index Register with Contents of Location $\$ 800$ |
| $040 C$ | CD | 1200 |  | JSR | DELAY | Jump to Subroutine Located at $\$ 1200$ |

## Direct Addressing Mode

The direct addressing mode is similar to the extended addressing mode except only one byte is used to form the EA. Direct addressing allows an instruction to access any location in page zero (locations $\$ 00-\$ F F$ ) with a two-byte instruction; therefore, the upper address bits are set to $\$ 00$. Direct addressing may be used with any read/modify/write, or regis-
ter/memory and bit manipulation instruction.
The following example adds two 16 -bit numbers. The result is then placed in the location of the first number; however, if the result exceeds 16 bits the C bit will be set. Figure 7 illustrates the steps required to determine the EA of the most significant byte of the first number, the contents of which is loaded into the accumulator.


Figure 7 - Direct Addressing Mode Example
\(\left.$$
\begin{array}{llllll} & & & \text { NUM1 } & \begin{array}{l}\text { ORG } \\
\text { RMB }\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\$ 10 \\
\text { NU }\end{array} \\
0527 & \text { B6 } & 11 & & \text { LDA } & \text { NUM1+1 } \\
0529 & \text { BB } & 13 & & \text { ADD } & \text { NUM2+2 }\end{array}
$$ \begin{array}{l}Load Accumulator with Contents of Location \$0011 <br>
(least significant byte of addend 1) <br>
Add Contents of Location \$0013 to Accumulator <br>

(least significant byte of addend 2)\end{array}\right]\)| Save Result in Location \$0011 |
| :--- |

## Indexed Addressing Mode

In the indexed addressing mode, the EA is variable and depends upon two factors: (1) the current contents of the index (X) register and (2) the offset contained in the byte(s) following the opcode. Three types of indexed addressing exist in the CDP6805 CMOS Family: no offset, 8-bit offset, and 16-bit offset. A good assembler should use the indexed addressing mode which requires the least offset. Either the no-offset or 8 -bit offset indexed addressing mode may be used with any read/modify/write or register/memory instruction. The 16 -bit offset indexed addressing is used only with register/memory instructions.

Indexed - No Offset. In this mode the contents of the X register are the EA; therefore, it is a one-byte
instruction. This mode is used to create an EA which is pointing to data in the lowest 256 bytes of the address space, including: I/O, RAM, and part of ROM. It may be used to move a pointer through a table, point to a frequently referenced location (e.g., an I/O location), or hold the address of a piece of data that is calculated by a program. Indexed, nooffset instructions use only one byte: the opcode.

```
\(E A=X+\$ 0000\)
PC + \(1 \rightarrow\) PC
```

In the following example, locations $\$ 45$ to $\$ 50$ are to be initialized with blanks (ASCII \$20). Figure 8 illustrates the steps necessary to determine the EA of a memory location pointed to by the index register. The contents of the accumulator are stored into this memory location.


Figure 8 - Indexed Addressing Mode, No Offset Example

| 05F0 | AE | 45 |  | LDX | $\# \$ 45$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 05F2 | A6 | 20 |  | LDA | $\# \$ 20$ | | Initialize Index Register with $\$ 45$ |
| :--- |
| 05F4 | F7

Indexed - 8-Bit Offset. To determine the EA in this addressing mode, the contents of the X register are added to the contents of the byte following the opcode. This addressing mode is useful in selecting the kth element of an $n$ element table. To use this mode the table must begin in the lowest 256 memory locations, and may extend through the first 511 memory locations (1FE is the last location at which the instruction may begin) of the CDP6805 CMOS Family. All indexed 8-bit offset addressing can be used for ROM, RAM, or I/O. This is a two-byte instruction with the offset contained in the byte following the opcode. Efficient use of ROM en-
courages the inclusion of as many tables as possible in page zero and page one.
$P C+1 \rightarrow P C$
$E A=(P C)+X+\$ 0000$
$P C+1 \rightarrow P C$
The following subroutine searches a list, which contains 256 separate items, for the first occurrence of a value contained in the accumulator. The search starts at $\$ 80$ and continues through $\$ 180$ unless the accumulator contents match one of the list items. Figure 9 shows the steps required to determine the EA of the next item to be compared.


Figure 9 - Indexed Addressing Mode, 8-bit Offset Example

|  |  |  | LIST | EQU | $\$ 80$ |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  | ORG | $\$ 075 A$ |  |  |
| 075A | $5 F$ |  | FIND | CLRX |  | Clear Index Register |
| 075B | E1 | 80 | REPEAT | CMP | LIST,X | Compare Accumulator to Contents of Location $\$ 80+\mathrm{X}$ |
| 075D | 27 | 03 |  | BEQ | RETURN | Return if Match Found |
| 075F | 5 C |  |  | INCX |  | Else Next Item |
| 0760 | 26 | F9 |  | BNE | REPEAT | If 256 Items Checked then Done Else Repeat |
| 0672 | 81 |  | RETURN | RTS |  |  |

Indexed - 16-Bit Offset. The EA for this two-byte offset addressing mode is calculated by adding the concatenated contents of the next two bytes following the opcode to the contents of the X register. This addressing mode is used in a manner similar to the indexed with 8 -bit offset, except that because the offset is 16 bits, the tables being referenced can be anywhere in the CDP6805 CMOS Family address space. For more details refer to the Indexing Compatibility paragraph below. This addressing mode is a three-byte instruction: one for the opcode and two
for the offset value.
$P C+1 \rightarrow P C$
$E A=(P C):(P C+1)+X$
$P C+2 \rightarrow P C$
In the following example, a block of data is moved from a source table to a destination table. The index register contains the block length. Figure 10 illustrates the steps required to determine the EA from which to store the memory address contents into the accumulator.


Figure 10-Indexed Addressing Mode, 16-Bit Offset Example.

|  |  |  | SOURCE | EQU | $\$ 200$ |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| DESTIN | EQU | $\$ 40$ |  |  |  |  |
| 0690 | AE | 04 |  | LDX | $\# \$ 04$ |  |
| 0692 | D6 | 0200 | BLKMOV | LDA | SOURCE,X | Load the Accumulator with Contents of <br> Location SOURCE $+X$ |
| 0695 | E7 | 40 |  | STA | DESTIN,X | Store the Contents of the Accumulator in <br> Socation DESTIN $+X$ |
| 0698 | 5A |  |  | DECX |  | Next Location |
| 0699 | 2A | 0692 |  | BPL | BLKMOV | Repeat if More to Transfer |

Indexing Compatibility. Because the index register in the CDP6805 CMOS Family is only eight bits long, and the offset values are zero, eight, or 16 bits, the MC6800 user may thus find that the X register on the CDP6805 CMOS Family is best utilized "backwards" from the MC6800. That is, the offset will contain the address of the table and the index register contains the displacement into the table.

## Relative Addressing Modes

Relative addressing is used only for branch instructions and specifies a location relative to the current value of the PC. The EA is formed by adding the contents of the byte following the opcode to the value of the PC. Because the PC will always point to the next statement in line while the addition is being performed, a zero relative offset byte results in no branch. The resultant EA is used if, and only if, a relative branch is taken. Notice that by the time the byte following the opcode is added to the contents of the PC , it is already pointing to the next instruction while the addition is being performed. Branch instructions always contain two bytes of machine code: one for the opcode and one for the relative offset byte. Because it is desirable to branch in either direction, the offset byte is sign-extended with a range of -128 to +127 bytes. The effective range however, must be computed with respect to the address of the next instruction in line. Relative branch instructions consist of two bytes; therefore, the effective range of
a branch instruction from the beginning of the branch instruction is defined as (where R is defined as the address of the branch instruction):
$(\mathrm{PC}+2)-128<=\mathrm{R}<=(\mathrm{PC}+2)+127$
or
$\mathrm{PC}-126<=\mathrm{R}<=\mathrm{PC}+129$ (for conditional branch only)

A jump (JMP) or jump-to-subroutine (JSR) should be used if the branch range is exceeded.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{PC}+1 \rightarrow \mathrm{PC} \\
& (\mathrm{PC}) \quad \rightarrow \mathrm{TEMP} \\
& \mathrm{PC}+1 \rightarrow \mathrm{PC} \\
& \mathrm{EA}=\mathrm{PC}+\mathrm{TEMP} \text { iff branch is taken }
\end{aligned}
$$

In the following example, the routine uses the index register as a counter for executing the subroutine WORK 50 times. The conditional branch, $B N E$, tests the $Z$ bit which is set if the result of the DECX instruction clears the index register. The line of code shown in Figure 11 contains an instruction to branch to REPEAT, if the condition code register Z bit has not been set by the previous program step (DECX). Notice in Figure 11 that the Z bit controls which number is added to the PC contents. If the branch is taken, the relative offset byte (\$FA) is added; however, if the branch is not taken, nothing is added which leaves the EA at PC +2 . Notice in this case the relative offset byte $\$ F A$ indicates a backward branch because the most significant bit is a 1 .

## Assembly Examples:

| 04A1 | AE | 50 |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 04A3 | CD | 04 CO |  |
| 04A6 | 5A |  |  |
| 04A7 | 26 | FA | 04A3 |


|  | LDX | $\# 50$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| REPEAT | JSR | WORK |
|  | DECX |  |
|  | BNE | REPEAT (See Example Description) |

## Bit Manipulation

Bit manipulation consists of two different addressing modes: bit set/clear and bit test and branch. The bit set/clear mode allows individual memory and I/ O bits to be set or cleared under program control. The bit test and branch mode allows any bit in memory to be tested and a branch to be executed as a result. Each of these addressing modes is described below.

Bit Set/Clear Addressing Mode. Direct byte addressing and bit addressing are combined in instructions which set and clear individual memory and I/O bits. In the bit set and bit clear instructions, the memory address location (containing the bit to be modified) is specified as direct address in the location following the opcode. As in direct addressing, the first 256 memory locations can be addressed. The
actual bit to be modified, within the byte, is specified within the low nibble of the opcode. The bit set and clear instructions are two-byte instructions: one for the opcode (including the bit number) and the other to address the byte which contains the bit of interest.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{PC}+1 \rightarrow \mathrm{PC} \\
& \mathrm{EA}=(\mathrm{PC})+1+\$ 0000 \\
& \mathrm{PC}+1 \rightarrow \mathrm{PC}
\end{aligned}
$$

The following example compares the true bit manipulation of the CDP6805 CMOS Family to the conventional method of bit manipulation. This example uses the bit manipulation instruction to turn off an LED using bit 2 of port $B$ and three conventional instructions to turn the LED on. The example polls the timer control register interrupt request bit (TCR, bit 7) to determine when the LED should turn on.


Figure 11-Relative Addressing Mode Example

| Assembly Example: |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 0001 |  | PORTB | EQU | \$01 | Define Port B Address |
|  |  | 0009 |  | TIMER | EQU | \$09 | Define TCR Address |
| BIT MANIPULATION INSTRUCTIONS |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 058F | 15 | 01 |  |  | BCLR | 2,PORTB | Turn Off LED |
| 0591 | OF | 09 | FC | REPT | BRCLR | 7,TIMER,REPT | Check Timer Status, Repeat if Not Timed Out |
| 90594 | 14 | 01 |  |  | BSET | 2,PORTB | Turn On LED if Timer Times Out |
| CONVENTIONAL INSTRUCTIONS |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  | LDA | PORTB | Get Port B Data |
|  |  |  |  |  | AND | \#\$FB | Mask Out Proper Bit |
|  |  |  |  |  | STA | PORTB | Save Updated Data |
|  |  |  |  | REPT | LDA | TIMER | Loop Until TCR is Set |
|  |  |  |  |  | BIT | \#\$80 |  |
|  |  |  |  |  | BNE | REPT |  |
|  |  |  |  |  | LDA | PORTB | Turn On LED |
|  |  |  |  |  | ORA | \#\$04 |  |
|  |  |  |  |  | STA | PORTB |  |

Figure 12 shows an example of the bit set/clear addressing mode. In this example, the assembly example above contains an instruction to clear bit 2

PORTB. (PORTB in this case is equal to the contents of memory location $\$ 001$, which is the result of adding the byte following the opcode to $\$ 0000$.)


Figure 12-Bit Set/Clear Addressing Example

Bit Test and Branch Addressing Mode. This mode is a combination of direct, relative, and bit set/clear addressing. The data byte to be tested is located via a direct address in the location following the opcode. The actual bit to be tested, within the byte, is specified within the low order nibble of the opcode. The relative address for branching is in the byte following the direct address (second byte following the opcode). Thus, the bit test and branch instructions are threebyte instructions (opcode byte, direct byte, and relative byte). A bit test and branch has a relative addressing range of $\mathrm{PC}-125<=\mathrm{R}<=\mathrm{PC}+130$ from the beginning of the instruction.

The bit manipulation routine shown in the pre-
vious paragraph uses a bit test and branch instruction to poll the timer; i.e., REPT BRCLR 7, TIMER, REPT. This instruction causes timer bit 7 to be tested until it is cleared, at which time it falls through to turn on an LED. Figure 13 illustrates this loop by showing both the branch and no branch status. Notice that if timer bit 7 is clear (timer not timed out), a backward branch is taken as long as the C bit is cleared (\$FD is added to $\$ 0594$ and its sign bit is negative). When the timer times out, timer bit 7 is set ( C bit is also set) and the program falls through to $\$ 0594$. Notice in the same routine example, that conventional bit test and branch instructions require three separate instructions to perform the same function.


Figure 13-Bit Test and Branch Addressing Mode Example

## Instruction Set Overview

## Introduction

It is convenient to view the CDP6805 CMOS Family as having five different instruction types rather than one set of instructions. These include: register/memory, read/modify/write, branch, control, and bit manipulation. A detailed definition of the instruction set used with the CDP6805 CMOS Family is included in this document. Appendix B contains an alphabetical listing of the instruction set; Appendix C provides a tabular functional listing of the instruction set; Appendix D contains a numerical listing which shows the mnemonic, addressing mode, cycles, and byte of the instruction set; Appendix E provides a cycle-by-cycle summary of the instruction set; and Appendix F contains an instruction set opcode map.

## Register/Memory Instructions

Most of these instructions contain two operands. One operand is inherently defined as either the accumulator or the index register; whereas, the other operand is fetched from memory via one of the addressing modes. The addressing modes which are applicable to the register/memory instructions are given below.

Immediate
Direct
Extended
Indexed - No Offset
Indexed - 8-Bit (One Byte) Offset
Indexed - 16-Bit (Two Byte) Offset
Immediate addressing is not provided with store and jump instructions (STA, STX, JMP, and JSR). An alphabetical listing of the register/memory instructions is provided below.

| ADC | Add Memory and Carry to Accumulator |
| :--- | :--- |
| ADD | Add Memory to Accumulator |
| AND | AND Memory with Accumulator |
| BIT | Bit Test Memory With Accumulator |
| CMP | (Logical Compare) <br> Compare Accumulator with Memory <br> (Arithmetic Compare) |

ORA OR Memory with Accumulator
SBC Subtract Memory and Borrow from Accumulator
STA Store Accumulator in Memory
STX Store Index Register in Memory
SUB Subtract Memory from Accumulator

## Read/Modify/Write Instructions

These instructions read a memory location or register, modify or test the contents, and then write the modified value back into the memory or the register. The available addressing modes for these instructions are given below. Notice that all read/modi$\mathrm{fy} /$ write instruction memory accesses are limited to the first 511 locations.

## Direct

Inherent
Indexed - No Offset
Indexed - 1 Byte Offset
The read/modify/write instructions are listed below.

Arithmetic Shift Left (Same as LSL)
CLR
COM Complement
DEC Decrement
INC Increment
LSL Logical Shift Left (Same as ASL)
LSR Logical Shift Right
NEG Negate (Two's Complement)
ROL Rotate Left thru Carry
ROR Rotate Right thru Carry
TST Test for Negative or Zero
The multiply instruction MUL, available on the CDP68HC05C4 and CDP68HC05D2 microcomputers, is also in the read/modify/write class.

## Control Instructions

Instructions in this group have inherent addressing, thus, only contain one byte. These instructions manipulate condition code bits, control stack and interrupt operations, transfer data between the accumulator and index register, and do nothing (NOP). The control instructions are listed below.

```
CLC Clear Carry Bit
CLI Clear Interrupt Mask Bit
NOP No Operation
RSP Reset Stack Pointer
RTI Return from Interrupt
RTS Return from Subroutine
SEC Set Carry Bit
SEI Set Interrupt Mask Bit
SWI Software Interrupt
TAX Transfer Accumulator to Index Register
TXA Transfer Index Register to Accumulator
```


## Bit Manipulation Instructions

There are two basic types of bit manipulation instructions. One group either sets or clears any single bit in a memory byte. This instruction group uses the bit set/clear addressing mode which is similar to direct addressing. The bit number (0-7) is part of the opcode. The other group tests the state of any single bit in a memory location and branches if the bit is set or clear. These instructions have "test and branch" addressing. The bit manipulation instructions are shown below (the term iff is an abbreviation for "if-and-only-if").

BCLR $n \quad$ Clear Bit $n$ in Memory
BRCLR $n$ Branch iff Bit $n$ in Memory is Clear
BRSET $n$ Branch iff Bit $n$ in Memory is Set
BSET $n \quad$ Set Bit $n$ in Memory ( $n=0 . . .7$ )

## Branch Instructions

In this set of instructions the program branches to a different routine when a particular condition is met. When the specified condition is not met, execution continues with the next instruction. Most of the branch instructions test the state of one or more of the condition code bits. Relative is the only legal addressing mode applicable to the branch instructions. A list of the branch instructions is provided below.

| BCC | Branch iff Carry is Clear (Same as BHS) |
| :--- | :--- |
| BCS | Branch iff Carry is Set (Same as BLO) |
| BEQ | Branch iff Equal to Zero |
| BHCC | Branch iff Half Carry is Clear |
| BHCS | Branch iff Half Carry is Set |
| BHI | Branch iff Higher than Zero |
| BHS | Branch iff Higher or Same as Zero |
|  | (Same as BCC) |
| BIH | Branch iff Interrupt Line is High |
| BIL | Branch iff Interrupt Line is Low |
| BLO | Branch iff Lower than Zero |
|  | (Same as BCS) |
| BLS | Branch iff Lower or Same as Zero |
| BMC | Branch iff Interrupt Mask is Clear |
| BMI | Branch iff Minus |
| BMS | Branch iff Interrupt Mask is Set |
| BNE | Branch iff Not Equal to Zero |
| BPL | Branch iff Plus |
| BRA | Branch Always |
| BRN | Branch Never |
| BSR | Branch to Subroutine |

Notice that the BIH and BIL instructions permit an external interrupt pin ( $\overline{\mathrm{INT}}$ or $\overline{\mathrm{IRQ}})$ to be easily tested.

## Software Applications

## Introduction

The term "software" is generally used to define computer programs and, in its broadest sense, it refers to an entire set of programs, procedures, and all related documentation associated with a system. In this manual, software refers to programs or routines. The writing of software is best learned by the experience of writing your own programs; however, a few good examples can certainly speed the learning experience. The examples provided in this chapter illustrate various CDP6805 CMOS Family software features and include some commonly used routines.

## Serial I/O Software For RS-232

The example discussed here uses two $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ port lines for the serial input and output lines. Figure 14 contains a schematic diagram of an RS-232 interface for serial I/O. Included as part of Figure 14 is the baud rate selection table showing baud rates of 300 , 1200,4800 and 9600 . The example subroutine is illustrated in Figure 15. In this example, PC2 is used as the input line and PC3 is used as the output line. Software loops are used to generate the desired baud rates; therefore, the crystal frequency ( $\mathrm{f}_{o s c}$ ) is critical ( 3.579545 MHz ). The lines commented by "CMOS DITTO" or "CMOS EQUALIZATION" are necessary to "make-up" for the generally fewer cycles-perinstruction of the CDP6805 CMOS Family members when compared with the M6805 HMOS devices.


* For devices which have port $C$ as input-only, use PB7

Figure 14-RS-232 Interface for Serial I/O via I/O Port Lines Schematic Diagram


Figure 15-Serial I/O Software Subroutine Example


Figure 15-Serial I/O Software Subroutine Example (Continued)

## Keypad Scan Routine

A common task for control-oriented microprocessors is to scan a $4 \times 4$ keypad, such as the one illustrated in the example of Figure 16. The example
shown uses port A lines 4-7 as scanning outputs and port $A$ lines $0-3$ as sensing inputs. It is often desirable to place CDP6805 CMOS Family members in a low-power mode; therefore, the STOP instruction is incorporated in the routine shown in Figure 17.


Figure 16-4 x 4 Keypad and Closure Detection Circuit Schematic Diagram

The example shown in Figure 17 uses an interrupt driven routine and supports either the STOP or a normal wait for interrupt (see below). If one of the keypad switches is depressed while in the STOP mode, the $\overline{\mathrm{IRQ}}$ line goes low. (This is the result of the port A scanning lines being low in the STOP mode.) When IRQ goes low the KEYSCN vector is selected and calls the KEYSCN interrupt service routine. The interrupt service routine first causes $\overline{\mathrm{IRQ}}$ to go high and then scans each column (PA4-PA7) individually to determine which keypad switch was depressed. Once the closed keypad switch is detected, the information is stored and a debounce subroutine is called to verify the closure. Debounce consists of checking for a keypad switch closure after a 1536 bus cycle delay to assure that the interrupt was not the result of noise. If after the debounce subroutine is completed no keypad switch is detected as being
closed, the closure is considered invalid and the processor again enters the STOP mode. If a keypad switch closure still exists after the debounce is completed, the routine waits for the switch to be released before forcing all scanning lines low for detection of the next closure. (A Schmitt trigger input on the $\overline{\mathrm{IRQ}}$ line further reduces the effects of noise.) Once the key closure is verified, a decode routine is used to determine which keypad switch was closed. The value which represents the position of the closed keypad switch is passed, via the accumulator, to a routine which decodes the position either into a number or a pointer for other routines. All routines which require that the keypad be scanned can enter the routine either by using the STOP mode or by enabling the external interrupt with a CLI instruction. The CLI instruction then requires a BRA instruction to wait for a keypad switch closure to generate an interrupt.

| PAGE | 001 | KEYSCN | . SA : 0 |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 00001 |  |  |  |  | OPT | CMOS |  |
| 00002 |  |  |  | * |  |  |  |
| 00003 |  | 0000 | A | PORTA | EQU | 0 |  |
| 00004 |  | 0004 | A | DDRA | EQU | 4 |  |
| 00005 |  | 0180 | A | DECODE | EQU | \$180 |  |
| 00006 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 00007A | 0100 |  |  |  | ORG | \$100 |  |
| 00008 |  |  |  | * |  |  |  |
| 00009A | 0100 | 3F 00 | A | RESET | CLR | PORTA | PREPARE SCANNING LINES |
| 00010A | 0102 | A6 F0 | A |  | LDA | \# \$F0 | PA4-PA7 AS OUTPUTS |
| 00011A | 0104 | B7 04 | A |  | STA | DDRA | WHICH OUTPUT LOWS |
| 00012A | 0106 | 8E |  | STOP | STOP |  | ENTER LOW PWR MODE - WAIT FOR INT |
| 00013 A | 0107 | 20 FD | 0106 |  | BRA | STOP |  |
| 00014 |  |  |  | * |  |  |  |
| 00015A | 0109 | A6 EF | A | KEYSCN | LDA | \#\$EF | CHECK 1ST COLUMN WITH A LOW |
| 00016A | 010B | B7 00 | A |  | STA | PORTA | AND OTHERS HIGH |
| 00017A | 010D | 2E 05 | 0114 | REPEAT | BIL | GOTIT | IF IRQ LINE LOW, COLUMN FOUND |
| 00018A | 010F | 3800 | A |  | LSL | PORTA | ELSE TRY NEXT COLUMN |
| 00019A | 0111 | 25 FA | 010D |  | BCS | REPEAT | REPEAT IF MORE COLUMNS, ELSE |
| 00020A | 0113 | 80 |  | RETURN | RTI |  | WAIT FOR VALID CLOSURE |
| 00021 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 00022A | 0114 | B6 00 | A | GOTIT | LDA | PORTA | SAVE KEY IN ACCA |
| 00023A | 0116 | AD OC | 0124 |  | BSR | DBOUNC | WAIT 1.5K BUS CYCLES (2K FOR HMOS) |
| 00024A | 0118 | 2F F9 | 0113 |  | BIH | RETURN | IF IRQ LINE HIGH, INVALID CLOSURE |
| 00025A | 011A | 2E FE | 011A | RELEAS | BIL | RELEAS | WAIT FOR KEY RELEASE |
| 00026A | 011C | AD 06 | 0124 |  | BSR | DBOUNC | PAUSE |
| 00027A | 011E | 2E FA | 011A |  | BIL | RELEAS | IF IRQ LINE LOW, KEY NOT RELEASED |
| 00028A | 0120 | 3 F 00 | A |  | CLR | PORTA | PREPARE SCAN LINES FOR STOP MODE |
| 00029A | 0122 | 20 5C | 0180 |  | BRA | DECODE | GO TO USER KEY DECODE ROUTINE |
| 00030 |  |  |  | * |  |  |  |
| 00031A | 0124 | AE FF | A | DBOUNC | LDX | \# \$FF |  |
| 00032A | 0126 | 5A |  | AGAIN | DECX |  | LOOPS 1536 TIMES FOR CMOS |
| 00033A | 0127 | 26 FD | 0126 |  | BNE | AGAIN | OR 2040 FOR HMOS |
| 00034A | 0129 | 81 |  |  | RTS |  |  |
| 00035 |  |  |  | * |  |  |  |
| 00036A | 012A | 80 |  | TWIRQ | RTI |  |  |
| 00037A | 012B | 80 |  | TIRQ | RTI |  |  |
| 00038A | 012C | 80 |  | SWI | RTI |  |  |
| 00039 |  |  |  | * |  |  |  |
| 00040A | 07F6 |  |  |  | ORG | \$7F6 |  |
| 00041 |  |  |  | * |  |  |  |
| 00042A | 07F6 | 012A | A |  | FDB | TWIRQ | TIMER WAIT VECTOR |
| 00043A | 07F8 | 012 B | A |  | FDB | TIRQ | TIMER INTERNAL VECTOR |
| 00044A | 07FA | - 0109 | A |  | FDB | KEYSCN | EXTERNAL INTERRUPT VECTOR |
| 00045A | 07FC | - 012C | A |  | FDB | SWI | SOFTWARE INTERRUPT VECTOR |
| 00046A | 07FE | - 0100 | A |  | FDB | RESET | RESET VECTOR |
| 00047 |  |  |  | * |  |  |  |
| 00048 |  |  |  |  | END |  |  |
| TOTAL | ERROR | RS 00000- | -00000 |  |  |  |  |

Figure 17. KEYSCN Routine Example

The CDP68HC05D2 features software programmable open drain outputs on PORT A and a PORT B interrupt which are helpful in the design of a keyboard interface.

## Stack Handling

By proper use of the stack, the versatility of a program can be increased. This can be done by allowing registers or values to be stored temporarily in RAM and then later retrieved. Variables which are stored in the stack are always positioned relative to the top of the stack. Stacks operate in a last-in-first-out (LIFO) fashion; that is, the last byte stored is the first byte that can be retrieved. Because of this LIFO characteristic, the stack is useful for passing subroutine variables as well as other valuable programming tools.


Figure 18-Alternative Keyboard Interface Utilizing CDP68HC05D2

The CDP6805 CMOS Family stack is reserved for subroutine return addresses and for saving register contents during interrupts. This is sufficient for most control-oriented applications; however, the routine shown in Figure 19 can provide the CDP6805E2 MPU with additional stack capability for temporary variable storage. In this routine, a temporary location called POINTR serves to hold the relative address of the next free stack location. When the routine is entered, the contents of POINTR are transferred to the index register. The two-byte indexed addressing mode is used to allow the stack to be located in any part of RAM. Because the index register is used to provide a relative address, the stack wraps around if more than 256 locations are pushed onto the stack. The stacking routine shown in Figure 19 uses two fixed temporary locations: one (called POINTR) is used to save the stack pointer and the other (called TEMPX) is used as a temporary storage for the index register. However, if the index register can be dedicated to the stack, both temporary locations can be deleted. In this example, two subroutines, PUSH and PULL are used to manipulate data. Subroutine PUSH is used by first loading the accumulator with the data to be saved and then performing a subroutine call to PUSH. Subroutine PULL is used by calling the subroutine PULL after which the data retrieved is contained in the accumulator.

## Note

If a single-chip MCU is used instead of the CDP6805E2, the stack must be located in RAM and a routine must check that the boundaries are not exceeded.

|  | ORG | $\$ 10$ |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| TEMP | RMB | 1 |  |
| POINTR | RMB | 1 |  |
| STACK | EQU | \$3FF |  |
|  | ORG | \$1000 |  |
| PUSH | STX | TEMPX | Save Index Reg <br> Contents |
|  | LDX | POINTR | Get Pointer <br> Save Byte at |
|  | STA | STACK, | Stack and Pointer |
|  | DEC | POINTR | Adjust Pointer <br> Retrieve Index <br> Reg Contents |
|  | LDX | TEMPX |  |
|  | RTS |  |  |
|  | STX | TEMPX |  |
|  | INC | POINTR |  |
|  | LDX | POINTR |  |
|  | LDA | STACK,X |  |
|  | REMPX |  |  |

Figure 19-Stack Emulation Routine

## Block Move

This example makes a copy of a block of data in another portion of memory. The indexed addressing modes of the CDP6805 CMOS Family make a block move relatively simple.

The routine is shown in Figure 20. In this example, the location of the first table entry is used as the offset for the indexed instruction. The index register is used to step through the table; therefore, the table may be up to 256 bytes long. This example uses a table length of 64 bytes (\$40).

|  |  | SOURCE | EQU | \$F0 |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | DESTIN | EQU | $\$ 40$ |  |
| AE | 20 |  | LDX | $\# \$ 20$ | Load Index Register w/Table Length |
| E6 | F0 | REPEAT | LDA | SOURCE,X | Get Table Entry |
| E7 | 40 |  | STA | DESTIN,X | Store Entry Table |
| 5A |  |  | DECX |  | Next Entry |
| 26 | F8 |  | BNE | REPEAT | REPEAT If More |

Figure 20 - Block Move Routine Example

## DAA (Decimal Adjust Accumulator)

Although the CDP6805 CMOS Family is primarily a controller, it is occasionally required to perform arithmetic operations on BCD numbers. Because the

ADD instruction operates on binary data, the result of the ADD instruction must be adjusted in these cases. A DAA subroutine example is shown in Figure 21. The DAA subroutine should be called immediately after the binary ADD instruction.


Figure 21 - DAA Subroutine Example

## Multiply

Multiply subroutines for either 16-bit x 16-bit or 8 -bit $\times 8$-bit multiplications can be written using less
than 30 bytes. Examples of both cases are illustrated in Figures 22 and 23. Note that the CDP68HC05C4 and CDP68HC05D2 have a multiply instruction.


Figure 22-16-bit x 16-bit Multiplication Subroutine Example


Figure 23-8-bit x 8-bit Multiplication Subroutine Example

## Divide

Two examples of subroutines which can be used for performing division of two numbers are illus-
trated in Figures 24 and 25. One subroutine performs a 16 -bit $\div 16$-bit with an 8 -bit result and the other performs a 16 -bit $\div 16$-bit with a 16 -bit result.


Figure 24-16-bit $\div$ 16-bit With 8-bit Result Subroutine Example


Figure 24-16-bit $\div$ 16-bit With 8-bit Result Subroutine Example (Continued)


Figure 25-16-bit $\div$ 16-bit With 16-bit Result Subroutine Example

## Hardware Features

## Introduction

Each member of the CDP6805 CMOS Family (except for the CDP6805E2 and CDP6805E3) contains. on-chip, nearly all of the support hardware necessary for a complete processor system. The block diagram of Figure 26 shows a central processing unit (CPU) which is identical for all members of the family. including the CDP6805E2 and CDP6805E3. There is one main difference in various family members and that is the size of the stack pointer and program counter registers. Because the size of these two registers is determined by the amount of device memory, they vary from 11 bits to 16 bits. Each fam-
ily member contains an on-chip oscillator which provides the processor timing, plus reset, and interrupt logic. Peripheral $I / O$ such as a timer, some bidirectional I/ O lines, RAM, and ROM (except for the CDP6805E2 and CDP6805E3) are included onchip in all family members. The peripherals and memory are located in similar locations throughout the family; therefore, once the user is familiar with any family device, (s)he is familiar with all. In addition, new devices can be incorporated in the family by adding to and/or subtracting from the peripheral blocks associated with the CPU. These peripheral blocks could include additional I/O lines, more RAM or an external bus.


92CS-38317
Figure 26 - CDP6805 CMOS Family Block Diagram

The CDP6805 CMOS Family of MCU/MPU devices are implemented using a single address map, memory mapped I/O, and Von Neumann architecture. Peripheral I/O devices, like the timer, are accessed by the CPU via the peripheral control and/or data registers which are located in the address map. Data is transferred to the peripheral I/O de-
vices with the same instructions that are used to access memory. The key to using the CDP6805 CMOS Family I/O features is in learning how the peripheral registers effect the device operation. Because a second address map is not used, there is no need for the system designer to learn a second set of specialized $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ instructions.

## Temporary Storage (RAM)

Random access memory (RAM) is used as temporary storage by the CPU. The RAM is temporary in that it is volatile and its contents are lost if power is removed. However, because RAM can be read from or written to, it is best used for storing variables. All on-chip RAM is contained in the first memory locations and the top of RAM is presently used by the processor as a program control stack. The stack is used to store return addresses for subroutine calls and the machine state for interrupts. The stack pointer register is used to keep track of (point to) the next free stack address location. The stack operates in a LIFO (last-in-first-out) mode so that operations may be nested. The actual stack size varies between the different family members; however, in all cases, exceeding the stack limit should be avoided. If the stack limit is exceeded, the stack pointer wraps around to the top of the stack and more than likely stack data is lost. Each interrupt requires five bytes of stack space and each subroutine requires two bytes. If, at worst case, a program requires five levels of subroutine nesting and one
level of interrupt, then 15 bytes of stack space should be reserved. Any unreserved stack RAM may be used for other purposes.

## Permanent Storage (ROM)

CMOS Family devices, except the CDP6805E2 and CDP6805E3, contain some permanent, nonvolatile mask-programmed read-only memory (ROM). Non-volatile memory is generally used to store the user programs as well as tables and constants.

## Oscillator

The on-chip oscillator contained on every CDP6805 CMOS Family device essentially generates the timing used by the device. The oscillator can be used in a number of different modes as shown in Figure 27. Each mode has its advantages and the basic trade-off is between economy and accuracy. An external CMOS oscillator is recommended when a crystal outside the specified range of the part is to be used.


Figure 27-CDP6805 CMOS Family Oscillator Modes

The CDP6805E2 and CDP6805E3 provide for only two types of oscillator inputs - crystal circuit or external clock. The CDP6805 CMOS Family MCU's (CDP6805F2/G2 and CDP68HC05C4/D2) use a manufacturing mask option to select either the crystal or resistor circuit. A second manufacturing mask option provides either a divide-by-two or divide-byfour circuit to produce the internal system clock. An external clock may be used with either the RC or crystal oscillator mask option.

## Resets

The CDP6805 CMOS Family processor can be reset in two ways: either by initial power-up or by the external reset input pin (RESET) (refer to Figure 27). Any of the reset methods allow an orderly startup. Additionally, the RESET input can be used to exit the STOP and WAIT modes of program execution.

The external $\overline{\text { RESET }}$ input allows the processor to recover from otherwise catastrophic errors. When using the external reset mode, the RESET pin must stay low for some minimum time as shown in Fig. 28. External reset ( $\overline{\mathrm{RESET}}$ ) is implemented with a Schmitt trigger input for improved noise immunity.

The power-on reset occurs when a positive transition is detected on $\mathrm{V}_{D D}$. The power-on reset is used strictly for power turn-on conditions and should not be used to detect any drops in the power supply storage. There is no provision for a power-down reset. The power-on circuitry provides for a delay from the time of first oscillator operation. If the external $\overline{\text { RESET }}$ pin is low at the end of the time out, the processor remains in the reset condition until the RESET pin goes high.

Any reset causes the following to occur:

1. All interrupt requests are cleared to " 0 ".
2. All interrupt enables in the peripheral control registers are cleared to disable interrupts.
3. The condition code register interrupt mask bit (I) is set to a " 1 " (disabled).
4. All data direction registers are cleared to " 0 " (input).
5. The stack pointer is reset to the top of stack.
6. The address bus is forced to the reset vector. (The reset vector contains the address of the reset routine.)
7. The STOP and WAIT latches are reset.
8. The external interrupt latch is reset.

*The $\overline{\text { RESET }}$ pulse width is a minimum of one $t_{\text {cyc }}$ for all members of the CDP6805 CMOS Family except the CDP68HC05C4 and CDP68HC05D2 which require the $\overline{\text { RESET }}$ pin to stay low for a minimum of one and one half $\mathrm{t}_{\text {cyc }}$.
**The delay from the time that the oscillator becomes active is $4064 \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{cyc}}$ in the CDP68HC05C4 and CDP68HC05D2, when programmed for a crystal oscillator. When programmed for an RC oscillator the delay is $2 t_{\text {cyc }}$ for the CDP68HC05D2.
***Internal timing signal not available externally.
Figure 28 - Power-on Reset and $\overline{\text { RESET }}$

## Interrupts

Systems often require that normal processing be interrupted so that some other event may be serviced. The CMOS Family program execution may be interrupted in the following ways:

1. Externally via the $\overline{\mathrm{IRQ}}$ pin. External interrupts are maskable.
2. Internally with the on-chip timer. The timer interrupt is maskable.
3. Internally with the serial communications interface on the CDP 68 HC 05 C 4 . The serial communications interface interrupts are maskable.
4. Internally with the serial peripheral interface provided on the CDP 68 HC 05 C 4 and CDP68HC05D2. The SPI system interrupts are maskable.
5. Internally with the Port B interrupt on the CDP68HC05D2. The Port B interrupt is maskable.
6. Internally by executing the software interrupt instruction (SWI). The SWI is non-maskable.

Interrupts such as timer, SPI, and SCI have several flags which will cause the interrupt. Generally interrupt flags are located in associated control registers. The interrupt flags and enable bits are never contained in the same register (except for the Port B interrupt). If the enable bit is a logic zero, it blocks the interrupt from occurring but does not inhibit the flag from being set. The general sequence for clearing interrupt is a software sequence of first accessing the status register while the interrupt flag is set, followed by a read or write of an associated register. Reset clears all enable bits to preclude interrupts during the reset procedure.

When an external timer, SCI, SPI, or Port B interrupt occurs, the interrupt is not immediately serviced until the current instruction being executed is completed. Until the completion of the current instruction, the interrupt is considered pending. After the current instruction execution is completed, unmasked interrupts may be serviced. When an unmasked interrupt is recognized, the current state of
the machine is pushed onto the stack, the interrupt mask bit in the condition code register is set to prevent further interrupts, the program counter is loaded with the address of the interrupt service routine, and the interrupt service routine is executed. If both an external and an internal hardware interrupt are pending, the external interrupt is serviced first; however, the internal hardware interrupt request
remains pending unless it is cleared during the external interrupt service routine. The software interrupt is executed in much the same manner as any other instruction. The external interrupt pin (IRQ) may be tested with the BIL or BIH conditional branch instructions. These instructions may be used to allow the external interrupt pin to be used as an additional input pin regardless of the state of the interrupt mask in the condition code register.
(a) Interrupt Functional Diagram

(*) Not available on the CDP6805E2/E3
(**) Schmitt trigger on the CDP6805E2/E3
(b) Interrupt Mode Diagram


Edge-Sensitive Trigger Condition
The minimum pulse width ( $t_{L L H}$ ) is one $t_{c y c}$. The period $t_{\text {ILIL }}$ should not be less than the number of $t_{c y c}$ cycles it takes to execute the interrupt service routine plus $20 \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{cyc}}$ cycles ( $21 \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{cyc}}$ for CDP68HC05C4 and CDP68HC05D2).
(2) $\overline{\text { IRO }}$ (MPU)


## External Interrupts

All external interrupts are maskable. If the interrupt mask bit (I) of the condition code register is set, all interrupts are disabled. Clearing the I bit enables the external interrupts. If the interrupt mask bit of the condition code register is cleared and the external interrupt pin IRQ is "low" or a negative edge has set the internal interrupt flip-flop, then the external interrupt occurs. When the interrupt is recognized, the current state of the machine is pushed onto the stack, the interrupt mask bit in the condition code register is set to prevent further interrupts until this one is serviced, the program counter is loaded with the appropriate vector location contents and the interrupt routine is executed. Either a level- and edge-sensitive or edge-sensitive only input is available as a mask option on the CDP6805F2/G2 and CDP68HC05C4/D2. Figure 29 shows both a functional diagram and timing for the interrupt line. The timing diagram shows two different treatments of the interrupt line (IRQ) to the processor. The first method shows single pulses on the interrupt line spaced far enough apart to be serviced. The minimum time between pulses is a function of the length of the interrupt service routine. Once a pulse occurs, the next pulse should not occur until the MPU software has exited the service routine (an RTI occurs). This time $\left(\mathrm{t}_{\text {ILIL }}\right)$ is obtained by adding 20 instruction cycles ( $\mathrm{t}_{\text {cyc }}$ ) (21 cycles for the CDP68HC05C4 and CDP68HC05D2) to the total number of cycles it takes to complete the service routine including the RTI instruction; refer to Figure 29. The second configuration shows many interrupt lines "wire ORed" to form the interrupts at the processor. Thus, if after servicing one interrupt the interrupt line remains low, then the next interrupt is recognized.

## Timer Interrupt CDP6805E2/E3/F2/G2

Each time the timer on the CDP6805E2/E3/F2/G2 decrements to zero (transitions from $\$ 01$ to $\$ 00$ ), the timer interrupt request bit (TCR7) is set. The processor is interrupted only if the timer mask bit (TCR6) and interrupt mask bit (I bit) are both cleared. When the interrupt is recognized, the current state of the machine is pushed onto the stack and the interrupt mask bit (I) in the condition code register is set. This mask prevents further interrupts until the present one is serviced. The processor now vectors to the timer service routine by loading the program counter with the contents of the timer interrupt vector. Notice that if the timer is being used to exit the WAIT mode, the timer WAIT vector is used instead of the normal timer interrupt vector. Software must be used to clear the timer interrupt request bit (TCR7). At the end of the timer interrupt service routine, the software normally executes an RTI instruction which restores the machine state and starts executing the interrupted program.

## Timer Interrupts CDP68HC05C4/D2

There are three different timer interrupt flags that will cause a timer interrupt whenever they are set and enabled. These three interrupt flags are found in the three most significant bits of the timer status register (TSR). All three timer interrupts will vector to the same service routine location. The three timer interrupt conditions are timer overflow, output compare, and input capture. All interrupt flags have corresponding enable bits (ICIE, OCIE, TOIE) found in the timer control register (TCR). Reset clears all enable bits, thus preventing an interrupt from occurring during the reset time period. The actual processor interrupt is generated only if the interrupt mask bit (I) in the condition code register is also cleared. When the interrupt is recognized, the current state of the machine is pushed onto the stack and the interrupt mask bit in the condition code register is set. This masks further interrupts until the present one is serviced. The general sequence for clearing an interrupt is a software sequence of accessing the status register while the flag is set, followed by a read or write of an associated register. Further information can be found in the Timer description.

## Serial Communications Interface (SCI) Interrupts CDP68HC05C4

An interrupt in the serial communications interface ( SCI ) of the CDP68HC05C4 occurs when one of the interrupt flag bits in the serial communications status register is set, provided the I bit in the condition code register is clear and the enable bit in the serial communications control register is enabled. When the interrupt is recognized, the current state of the machine is pushed onto the stack, the I bit in the condition code register is set to prevent further interrupts until the present one is serviced, and the program counter vectors to the serial interrupt service routine. Software in the serial interrupt service routine must determine the priority and cause of the SCI interrupt by examining the interrupt flags and status bits located in the serial communications register. The general sequence for clearing an interrupt is a software sequence of accessing the serial communications status register while the flag is set followed by a read or write of an associated register. Refer to the section on the Serial Communications Interface for a description of the SCI system and its interrupts.

## Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) System Interrupts CDP68HC05C4/D2

An interrupt in the serial peripheral interface (SPI) of the CDP 68 HC 05 C 4 and CDP68HC05D2 occurs when one of the interrupt flag bits in the serial peripheral status register is set, provided the interrupt mask bit (I) of the condition code register is clear and the enable bit in the serial peripheral control reg-
ister is enabled. When the interrupt is recognized, the current state of the machine is pushed onto the stack, the interrupt mask bit in the condition code register is set to mask further interrupts until the present one is serviced, and the program counter vectors to the SPI interrupt service routine. Software in the serial peripheral interface service routine must determine the priority and cause of the SPI interrupt by examining the interrupt flag bits located in the SPI status register. The general sequence for clearing an interrupt is a software sequence of accessing the status register while the flag is set, followed by a read or write of an associated register. Refer to the section on the Serial Peripheral Interface for a description of the SPI system and its interrupts.

## Port B Interrupt CDP68HC05D2

A Port B interrupt on the CDP68HC05D2 will occur when any one of the eight port lines (PB0-PB7) is pulled to a low level, provided the interrupt mask bit of the condition code register is clear and the enable bit in the miscellaneous control register is enabled. Before enabling Port B interrupts, PB0 through PB7 should be programmed as inputs, i.e., their corresponding DDR bits must be zero. Programming any of these lines as outputs inhibits them from generating an interrupt.

The purpose of this interrupt is to provide easy use of the PB0-PB7 lines as keyboard sense inputs. For systems where the keyboard response is not interrupt driven, this interrupt can be disabled. Port B interrupts will also cause an exit from the stop mode.

## Software Interrupt CDP6805 Family

The software interrupt is executed the same as any other instruction and as such will take precedence over hardware interrupts only if the I bit is set (interrupts masked). The SWI is executed regardless of the state of the interrupt mask in the condition code register; however, when the I bit is clear (interrupts enabled) and an external or internal hardware interrupt is pending, the SWI instruction (or any other instruction) is not fetched until after the hardware interrupts have been serviced. Recall however that the hardware interrupts wait for the current instruction to complete, including the software interrupt instruction, before they are serviced. The execution of the SWI instruction is similar to hardware interrupts in that the I bit is set, CPU registers are stacked, etc. The SWI uses its own unique vector location.

## Stop

The STOP instruction places the CDP6805 in its lowest power consumption mode. In the STOP function, the internal oscillator is turned off causing all internal processing and the timer to be halted; refer to Figure 30. In the CDP6805E2/E3/F2/G2 the
timer control register (TCR) bits 6 and 7 are altered to remove any pending timer interrupt requests and to disable any further timing interrupts. External interrupts are enabled in the condition code register $(\mathrm{I}=0)$. All other registers, memory, and $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ lines remain unaltered. The processor can be brought out of the STOP mode by an external $\overline{\mathrm{IRQ}}, \overline{\mathrm{RESET}}, \mathrm{a}$ Port B interrupt, or a timer interrupt if the timer oscillator (as opposed to the internal oscillator) is being used.


Figure 30-STOP Function Flowchart

## Wait

The WAIT instruction places the CDP6805 in a low-power consumption mode. The WAIT mode consumes somewhat more power than the STOP mode. In the WAIT mode, the internal clock remains active, and all CPU processing is stopped; however, the programmable timer, serial peripheral interface, and serial communications interface systems remain active. Refer to Figure 31. During the WAIT mode, the I bit in the condition code register is cleared to enable interrupts. All other registers, memory, and I/O lines remain in their last state. An interrupt or reset brings the processor out of the WAIT mode. The timer may be enabled by software prior to enter-


Figure 31 - WAIT Function Flowchart
ing the WAIT mode to allow a periodic exit from the WAIT mode. If an external and a timer interrupt occur at the same time, the external interrupt is serviced first; then, if the timer interrupt request is not cleared in the external interrupt routine, the normal timer interrupt (not the timer WAIT interrupt) is serviced since the MCU is no longer in the WAIT mode.

## I/O Ports

At least 13 individually programmable, bidirectional I/O lines are included on each member of the CDP6805 CMOS Family; however, more than this exists on most family members. Each line is individually programmable as either an input or an output via its corresponding data direction register (DDR) bit as shown in Figure 32. A pin is configured as an output if its corresponding DDR bit is set to a logic " 1 ". A pin is configured as an input if its corresponding DDR bit is cleared to a logic " 0 ". At reset, all DDR's are cleared, which configures all port pins as inputs. The data direction registers are able to be written to or read by the processor and may be used with RMW instructions. Data is written into the port output data latch regardless of the state of the DDR; therefore, initial output data should be written to the output data latch before programming the DDR. After a port line has been configured as an output, the data on that line reflects the corresponding bit of the output data latch. When programmed as an input, the input data bit(s) are not latched. An MPU read of the port bits programmed as outputs reflects the last value written to that location. An MPU read of the port bits programmed as inputs reflects the current status of the corresponding input pins. Table II provides a description of the effects of port data register operation.

The CDP68HC05C4/D2 includes a number of input-only lines. These lines have no DDR and have read-only data registers.

PORTS A, B and C on the CDP68HC05C4 may be programmed as inputs or outputs. Port D on the CDP68HC05C4 is a 7 -bit fixed input port (PD0PD5, PD7) that continually monitors the external pins whenever the SPI or SCI systems are disabled. During power-on reset or external reset all seven bits become valid input ports because all special function output drivers are disabled. For example, with the serial communications interface ( SCI ) system enabled $(\mathrm{RE}=\mathrm{TE}=1), \mathrm{PD} 0$ and PD1 inputs will read zero. With the serial peripheral interface (SPI) system disabled ( $\mathrm{SPE}=0$ ), PD 2 through PD5 will read the state of the pin at the time of the read operation. No data register is associated with the port when it is used as an input.

PORTS A, B and C on the CDP68HC05D2 may be programmed as inputs or outputs. PORT A can be programmed to be open-drain outputs when bit 0 in the Miscellaneous Control/Status Register is set
and their DDR bits are set. PORT B features an interrupt which occurs when any one of the eight port lines is pulled low provided the registers are properly enabled.

PORT D contains four individually programmable bidirectional lines and three input lines. The direction of the four bidirectional lines is determined by the state of the data direction register (DDR). Each of these four lines has an associated DDR bit. The
validity of a port bit is determined by whether the SPI system and external timer oscillator are enabled or disabled. If the SPI is enabled and bit 5 of the SPI control register is true, PORT D bits 2-5 become open-drain outputs. An exception is PD6, the timer output compare pin (TCMP), which is always an output. Upon power-on-reset or external reset all bits, except PD0 (output pin for the timer oscillator) and PD6, contain input port data because all other special function output drivers are disabled.


Figure 32 - Typical Port I/O Circuitry

TABLE II. Port Data Register Accesses

| R/W | DDR Bit | Results |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| 0 | 0 | The I/O pin is in input mode. Data is written into the output <br> data latch. |
| 0 | 1 | Data is written into the output data latch and output to the <br> I/O pin. |
| 1 | 0 | The state of the I/O pin is read. |
| 1 | 1 | The I/O pin is in an output mode. The output data latch is <br> read. |

R/W is an internal line.

## Timer Description

All CDP6805 CMOS Family devices contain a timer on chip.

## Timer CDP6805E2/E3/F2/G2

The timer on the CDP6805E2/E3/F2/G2 contains an 8-bit software programmable counter with a 7-bit software selectable prescaler. Figure 33 contains a block diagram of the timer. The counter may be preset under program control and decrements towards zero. When the counter decrements to zero, the timer interrupt request bit (i.e., bit 7 of the timer control register [TCR]) is set. Then, if the timer inter-
rupt is not masked (i.e., bit 6 of the TCR and the I bit in the condition code register are both cleared), the processor receives an interrupt. After completion of the current instruction, the processor proceeds to store the appropriate registers on the stack and then fetches the timer vector address in order to begin servicing.

The counter continues to count after it reaches zero, allowing the software to determine the number of internal or external input clocks since the timer interrupt request bit was set. The counter may be read at any time by the processor without disturbing the count. The contents of the counter become stable, prior to the read portion of a cycle, and do not change during the read. The timer interrupt request bit remains set until cleared by the software. If a clear occurs before the timer interrupt is serviced, the interrupt is lost. TCR7 may also be used as a scanned status bit in a non-interrupt mode of operation (TCR6=1).

The prescaler is a 7-bit divider which is used to extend the maximum length of the timer. Bit 0 , bit 1 and bit 2 of the TCR are programmed to choose the appropriate prescaler output within the range of $\div 1$ to $\div 128$ which is used as the counter input. The
processor cannot write into or read from the prescaler; however, its contents are cleared to all " 0 s" by the write operation into TCR when bit 3 of the written data equals one. This allows for truncation-free counting.

The timer input can be configured for three different operating modes plus a disable mode depending on the value written to the TCR4 and TCR5 control bits. Refer to the Timer Control Register section.

## Timer Input Mode 1

If TCR5 and TCR4 are both programmed to a " 0 ", the input to the timer is from an internal clock and the TIMER input pin is disabled. The internal clock mode can be used for periodic interrupt generation, as well as a reference in frequency and event measurement. The internal clock is the instruction cycle clock. During a WAIT instruction, the internal clock to the timer continues to run at its normal rate.

## Timer Input Mode 2

With TCR5=0 and TCR4=1, the internal clock and the TIMER input pin are ANDed to form the timer input signal. This mode can be used to measure external pulse widths. The external timer input pulse simply turns on the internal clock for the duration of the pulse. The resolution of the count in this mode is $\pm$ one internal clock and, therefore, accuracy improves with longer input pulse widths.

## Timer Input Mode 3

If TCR5=1 and TCR4=0, all inputs to the timer are disabled.

## Timer Input Mode 4

If TCR5=1 and TCR4=1, the internal clock input to the timer is disabled and the TIMER input pin becomes the input to the timer. In this mode, the timer can be used to count external events as well as external frequencies for generating periodic interrupts. The counter is clocked on the falling edge of the external signal.

Figure 33 shows a block diagram of the timer subsystem. Power-on reset and the STOP instruction invalidate the contents of the counter.

## Timer Control Register (TCR)

The eight bits in the TCR are used to control various functions such as configuring the operation mode, setting the division ratio of the prescaler, and generating the timer interrupt request signal. A description of each TCR bit function is provided below. All bits in this register except bit 3 are read/write bits.

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| TCR7 | TCR6 | TCR5 | TCR4 | TCR3 | TCR2 | TCR1 | TCR0 |

TCR7 - Timer interrupt request bit: bit used to indicate the timer interrupt when it is logic " 1 ".
1 - Set whenever the counter decrements to zero or under program control.
0 - Cleared on external $\overline{\mathrm{RESET}}$, power-on reset, STOP instruction, or program control.

TCR6 - Timer interrupt mask bit: when this bit is a logic "l", it inhibits the timer interrupt to the processor.
1 - Set on external $\overline{\text { RESET, power-on reset, STOP }}$ instruction, or program control.
0 - Cleared under program control.

TCR5 - External or internal bit: selects the input clock source to be either the external timer pin or the internal clock. (Unaffected by RESET.)
1 - Select external clock source.
0 - Select internal clock source.

TCR4 - External enable bit control bit: used to enable the external TIMER pin. (Unaffected by RESET.)
1 - Enable external TIMER pin.
0 - Disable external TIMER pin.

| TCR5 | TCR4 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| 0 | 0 | Internal Clock to Timer |
| 0 | 1 | AND of Internal Clock and <br> TIMER Pin to Timer |
| 1 | 0 | Inputs to Timer Disabled |
| 1 | 1 | TIMER Pin to Timer |

Refer to Figure 33 for Logic Representation.

TCR3 - Timer Prescaler Reset bit: writing a " 1 " to this bit resets the prescaler to zero. A read of this location always indicates " 0 ". (Unaffected by RESET.)

TCR2, TCR1, TCR0 - Prescaler select bits: decoded to select one of eight outputs on the prescaler. (Unaffected by RESET.)

## Prescaler

| TCR2 | TCR1 | TCRO | Result |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | $\div 1$ |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | $\div 2$ |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | $\div 4$ |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | $\div 8$ |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | $\div 16$ |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | $\div 32$ |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | $\div 64$ |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | $\div 128$ |



Figure 33 - Programmable Timer/Counter Block Diagram.

## Programmable Timer CDP68HC05C4/D2

A 16-bit programmable timer, preceded by a fixed prescaler, is available on the CDP68HC05C4 and CDP68HC05D2. It can be used for many purposes including measuring the pulse width of an input signal while simultaneously generating an output signal. Pulse widths for both input and output signals can vary from several microseconds to many seconds. The timer is also capable of generating periodic interrupts, indicating passage of an arbitrary number of MCU cycles or counts from an external oscillator. A block diagram of the timer is shown in Figure 34.

Because the timer has a 16-bit architecture, each specific functional segment is represented by two registers. These registers contain the high and low byte of that functional segment. Generally, accessing the low byte of a specific timer function allows full control of that function; however, an access of the high byte inhibits that specific timer function until the low byte is also accessed.

## Note

The I bit in the condition code register should be set while manipulating both the high and low byte register of a specific timer function to ensure that an interrupt does not occur. A problem could arise if an interrupt occurred in the interval of time between the access of the high and low byte.

A description of the timer registers follows:

## Counter Register

The key element in the programmable timer is a 16-bit free-running counter, or counter register, preceded by a prescaler which divides the internal processor clock by four. The prescaler gives the timer a resolution of 2.0 microseconds if the internal processor clock is 2.0 MHz . The counter is clocked to increasing values during the low portion of the inter-
nal processor clock. Software can read the counter at any time without affecting its value.

The double byte free-running counter can be read from either of two locations. One double byte is called the counter register, and the other double byte is called the counter alternate register. A read sequence containing only a read of the least significant byte of the free-running counter, from either double byte, will receive the count value at the time of the read. If a read of the free-running counter or counter alternate register first addresses the most significant byte, it causes the least significant byte to be transferred to a buffer. This buffer value remains fixed after the first most significant byte read even if the user reads the most significant byte several times. This buffer is accessed when reading the free-running counter or counter alternate register's least significant byte, after a read of the most significant byte, and thus completes a read sequence of the total counter value. Notice that in reading either the freerunning counter or counter alternate register, if the most significant byte is read, the least significant byte must also be read in order to complete the sequence.

The free-running counter is set to some constant during reset and is always a read-only register. During a power-on reset, the counter is also configured to the constant and begins running after the oscillator startup delay. Because the free-running counter is 16 bits preceded by a fixed divide-by-four prescaler, the value in the free-running counter repeats every $262,144 \mathrm{MCU}$ internal processor clock cycles. When the counter rolls over from $\$$ FFFF to $\$ 0000$, the timer overflow flag (TOF) bit is set. An interrupt can also be enabled when counter rollover occurs by setting its interrupt enable bit (TOIE).

## Output Compare Register

The output compare register is a 16 -bit read/write


92CM-38347
Figure 34 - Programmable Timer Block Diagram
*Timer clock source option available on the CDP68HC05D2
register which is made up of two 8 -bit registers. The output compare register can be used for several purposes such as controlling an output waveform or indicating when a period of time has elapsed. The output compare register is unique in that all bits are readable and writable and are not altered by the timer hardware. Reset does not affect the contents of this register. If the compare function is not utilized, the two bytes of the output compare register can be used as storage locations.

The contents of the output compare register are compared with the contents of the free-running counter once during every four internal processor clocks. If a match is found, the corresponding output compare flag (OCF) is set and the corresponding output level (OLVL) bit is clocked (by the output compare circuit pulse) to an output level register. The values in the output compare register and the output level bit should be changed after each successful comparison in order to control an output
waveform or establish a new elapsed timeout. An interrupt can also accompany a successful output compare provided that the corresponding interrupt enable bit, OCIE, is set.

After a processor write cycle to the output compare register containing the most significant byte, the output compare function is inhibited until the least significant byte is also written. The user must write both locations if the most significant byte is written first. A write made only to the least significant byte will not inhibit the compare function. The free-running counter is updated every four internal processor clock cycles due to the internal prescaler. The minimum time required to update the output compare register is a function of the software program rather than the internal hardware.

A processor write may be made to either byte of the output compare register without affecting the other byte. The output level (OLVL) bit is clocked to the output level register regardless of whether the output compare flag (OCF) is set or clear.

Because neither the output compare flag (OCF bit) nor the output compare register is affected by reset, care must be exercised when initializing the output compare function with software. The following procedure is recommended:

1. Write the high byte of the output compare register to inhibit further compares until the low byte is written.
2. Read the timer status register to arm the OCF if it is already set.
3. Write the output compare register low byte to enable the output compare function with the flag clear.
The advantage of this procedure is to prevent the OCF bit from being set between the time it is read and the write to the output compare register. A software example is shown below.

| B7 | 16 | STA | OCMPHI | Inhibit Output Compare |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| B6 | 13 | LDA | TSTAT | Arm OCF Bit if Set |
| BF | 17 | STX | OCMPLD | Ready for Next Compare |

## Input Capture Register

The two 8 -bit registers which make up the 16-bit input capture register are read-only and are used to latch the value of the free-running counter after a defined transition is sensed by the corresponding input capture edge detector. The level transition which triggers the counter transfer is defined by the corresponding input edge bit (IEDG). Reset does not affect the contents of the input capture register.

The result obtained by an input capture will be one more than the value of the free-running counter on the rising edge of the internal processor clock preceding the external transition. This delay is required for internal synchronization. Resolution is affected by the prescaler allowing the timer to only
increment every four internal processor clock cycles.
The free-running counter contents are transferred to the input capture register on each proper signal transition regardless of whether the input capture flag (ICF) is set or clear. The input capture register always contains the free-running counter value which corresponds to the most recent input capture.

After a read of the most significant byte of the input capture register, counter transfer is inhibited until the least significant byte of the input capture register is also read. This characteristic forces the minimum pulse period attainable to be determined by the time used in the capture software routine and its interaction with the main program. A polling routine using instructions such as BRSET, BRA, LDA, STA, INCX, CMBX, and BEG might take 34 machine cycles to complete. The free-running counter increments every four internal processor clock cycles due to the prescaler.

A read of the least significant byte of the input capture register does not inhibit the free-running counter transfer. Again, minimum pulse periods are ones which allow software to read the least significant byte and perform needed operations. There is no conflict between the read of the input capture register and the free-running counter transfer since they occur on opposite edges of the internal processor clock.

## Timer Control Register (TCR)

The timer control register (TCR) is an 8-bit read/write register which contains control bits. The timer control register on the CDP68HC05C4 contains five control bits; the timer control register on the CDP68HC05D2 contains an additional two control bits. Three of the five bits in common between the CDP68HC05C4 and CDP68HC05D2 control interrupts associated with each of the three flag bits found in the timer status register (discussed below). The other two bits control: 1) which edge (negative or positive) is significant to the input capture edge detector and 2) the next value to be clocked to the output level register in response to a successful output compare. The two extra bits found in the CDP68HC05D2 control: 1) the source of the timer clock and 2) whether the external timer oscillator is enabled. The timer control register and the free-running counter are the only sections of the timer affected by rest. The TCMP pin is forced low during external reset and stays low until a valid compare changes it to a high. The timer control register is illustrated below followed by a definition of each bit.

| 7 | 6 | 5 | $4^{*}$ | $3^{*}$ | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ICIE | OCIE | TOIE | EOE | ECC | - | IEDG | OLVL |

[^0]Bit 7 ICIE Input Capture Interrupt Enable If set, a timer interrupt is enabled whenever the ICF status flag is set; if clear, the interrupt is inhibited. ICIE is cleared by reset.

Bit 6 OCIE Output Compare Interrupt Enable If set, a timer interrupt is enabled whenever the OCF status flag is set; if clear, the interrupt is inhibited. OCIE is cleared by reset.

Bit 5 TOIE Timer Overflow Interrupt Enable If set, a timer interrupt is enabled whenever the timer status flag, TOF, is set; if clear, the interrupt is inhibited. TOIE is cleared by reset.

Bit 4 EOE External Oscillator Enable (CDP68HC05D2 only) If set, the external timer oscillator is enabled. If cleared, the inverter between pins 29 and 30 is disabled and cannot be used in a crystal or RC oscillator. EOE is cleared by reset.

Bit 3 ECC External Clock Connect (CDP68HC05D2 only)
If set, the internal clock input to the timer is disabled and the external timer oscillator is connected to the input to the timer. The ECC bit is cleared by reset.
Bit 1 IEDG Input Edge
Controls which level transition on pin 37 will trigger a free-running counter transfer to the input capture register. Reset does not affect the IEDG bit. $0=$ negative edge; $1=$ positive edge.
Bit 0 OLVL Output Level
This is the next value to be clocked to the output level register by a successful output compare and appears at pin 35. This bit and the output level register are cleared by reset. 0 = low output; 1 = high output.

## Timer Status Register (TSR)

A timer status register (TSR) is an 8-bit register in which the three most significant bits contain readonly status information. These three bits indicate the following:

1. A proper transition has taken place at pin 37 with an accompanying transfer of the free-running counter contents to the input capture register,
2. A match has been found between the free-running counter and the output compare register, and
3. A free-running counter transition from \$FFFF to $\$ 0000$ has been sensed (timer overflow).
The timer status register is illustrated below followed by a definition of each bit.

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ICF | OCF | TOF | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Bit 7 ICF The input capture flag (ICF) is set when a proper edge has been sensed by the input capture edge detector. It is cleared by a processor access of the timer status register (with ICF set) followed by accessing the low byte of the input capture register. Reset does not affect the input compare flag.

Bit 6 OCF The output compare flag (OCF) is set when the output compare register contents match the contents of the free-running counter. The OCF is cleared by accessing the timer status register (with OCF set) and then accessing the low byte of the output compare register. Reset does not affect the output compare flag.

Bit 5 TOF The timer overflow flag (TOF) bit is set by a transition of the free-running counter from \$FFFF to $\$ 0000$. It is cleared by accessing the timer status register (with TOF set) followed by an access of the free-running counter's least significant byte. Reset does not affect the TOF bit.

Accessing the timer status register satisfies the first condition required to clear any status bits which happen to be set during the access. The only remaining step is to provide an access of the register which is associated with the status bit. Typically, this presents no problem for the input capture and output compare functions.

A problem can occur, however, when using the time overflow function and reading the free-running counter at random times to measure an elapsed time. Without incorporating the proper precautions into software, the timer overflow flag could unintentionally be cleared if: 1) the timer status register is read or written when TOF is set, and 2) the least significant byte of the free-running counter is read but not for the purpose of servicing the flag. The counter alternate register contains the same value as the freerunning counter; therefore, this alternate register can be read at any time without affecting the timer overflow flag in the timer status register.

During STOP and WAIT instructions, the programmable timer functions as follows: during the wait mode, the timer continues to operate normally
and may generate an interrupt to trigger the CPU out of the wait state; during the stop mode, the timer holds at its current state, retaining all data, and resumes operation from this point when an external interrupt is received, unless the CDP68HC05D2 is set up to use the timer oscillator, in which case, the timer continues to count.
The on-chip oscillator circuit is functionally equivalent to a Schmitt NAND gate with a tri-statable output. Reset forces the oscillator into its high impedance state with a weak pull-up device on both its input and output. When the oscillator is enabled for the first time, its output is driven and the weak pullup devices are turned off. If the oscillator is subsequently disabled, its output will be pulled high but cannot be put in a high impedance state again unless the microcomputer is reset. However, when enabled, the oscillator has no hysteresis. The feedback circuit which causes hysteresis is only switched in when the clock input to the timer is connected to the external oscillator.

The EOE (External Oscillator Enable) and ECC (External Clock Connect) bits in the Timer Control Register control the external timer oscillator.

1. Crystal Oscillator Operation -
a. First set the EOE bit to start the crystal oscillating.
b. When oscillation has stabilized, the ECC bit can be set to begin clocking the timer with the external timer oscillator.
2. RC Oscillator Operation -

When it is desired to clock the timer from the timer oscillator, set both the EOE and the ECC bits at the same time. (If EOE is set before ECC, the oscillator will be biased at its midpoint in a high current state causing power to be dissipated.)
3. No external timer oscillator being used -

If the EOE bit is never set, the oscillator will remain in its high impedance state allowing its pins to be used as PD0 and PD1 input lines. In this case, these pins function as normal inputs and should not be left floating.
4. Timer oscillator used for event counting -

Set both the EOE and ECC bits and drive the timer oscillator input pin with the event signal which is to be counted. (Note that if EOE remains reset and only ECC is set, the event signal can be connected to the timer oscillator output pin, and the input pin can be used as a Port D input line.)

## External Oscillator Input on the CDP68HC05D2

The CDP68HC05D2 features an on-chip oscillator for the timer. The timer may run using the internal oscillator or the timer oscillator. External clock connect, bit 3, in the timer control register controls the source of the timer clock. If the ECC bit is set the internal clock input to the timer is disabled and the timer oscillator is connected to the input to the timer. Because this mode of operation permits the
timer to continue running when the processor is in the STOP mode, timer interrupts, if enabled, will still occur and can be used to exit from the STOP mode. Figure 35 shows the timer oscillator controls. The frequency of the external oscillator must be less than half the CPU oscillator frequency.


Figure 35 - External Timer Oscillator Controls

## Serial Communications Interface (SCI) Featured on the CDP68HC05C4

## Introduction

A full-duplex asynchronous serial communications interface (SCI) is provided on the CDP68HC05C4 with a standard NRZ format and a variety of baud rates. The SCI transmitter and receiver are functionally independent, but use the same data format and bit rate. The serial data format is standard mark/ space (NRZ) which provides one start bit, eight or nine data bits, and one stop bit. "Baud" and "bit rate" are used synonymously in the following description.

## SCI Two-Wire System Features

- Standard NRZ (mark/ space) format.
- Advanced error detection method includes noise detection for noise duration of up to $1 / 16$ bit time.
- Full-duplex operation (simultaneous transmit and receive).
- Software programmable for one of 32 different baud rates.
- Software transmitter and receiver enable bits.
- Separate selectable word length (eight or nine bit words).
- SCI may be interrupt driven.
- Four separate enable bits available for interrupt control.


## SCI Receiver Features

- Receiver wake-up function (idle or address bit).
- Idle line detect.
- Framing error detect.
- Noise detect.
- Overrun detect.
- Receiver data register full flag.


## SCI Transmitter Features

- Transmit data register empty flag.
- Transmit complete flag.
- Break send.

Any SCl two-wire system requires receive data in (RDI) and transmit data out (TDO).

## Data Format

Receive data in (RDI) or transmit data out (TDO)
is the serial data which is presented between the internal data bus and the output pin (TDO), and between the input pin (RDI) and the internal data bus. Data format is as shown for the NRZ in Figure 36 and must meet the following criteria:

1. A high level indicates a logic one and a low level indicates a logic zero.
2. The idle line is in a high (logic one) state prior to transmission/reception of a message.
3. A start bit (logic zero) is transmitted/received indicating the start of a message.
4. The data is transmitted and received least-significant-bit first.
5. A stop bit (high in the tenth or eleventh bit position) indicates the byte is complete.
6. A break is defined as the transmission or reception of a low (logic zero) for some multiple of the data format.


Figure 36 - Data Format

## Wake-Up Feature

In a typical multiprocessor configuration, the software protocol will usually identify the addressee(s) at the beginning of the message. In order to permit uninterested MPUs to ignore the remainder of the message, a wake-up feature is included whereby all further SCI receiver flag (and interrupt) processing can be inhibited until its data line returns to the idle state. An SCI receiver is re-enabled by an idle string of at least ten (or eleven) consecutive ones. Software for the transmitter must provide for the required idle string between consecutive messages and prevent it from occurring within messages.

The user is allowed a second method of providing the wake-up feature in lieu of the idle string discussed above. This method allows the user to insert a logic one in the most significant bit of the transmit data word which needs to be received by all "sleeping" processors.

## Receive Data In

Receive data in is the serial data which is presented from the input pin via the serial communica-
tions interface (SC1) to the internal data bus. While waiting for a start bit, the receiver samples the input at a rate which is 16 times higher than the set baud rate. This 16 times higher-than-baud rate is referred to as the RT rate in Figures 37 and 38, and as the receiver clock in Figure 42. When the input (idle) line is detected low, it is tested for three more sample times (referred to as the start edge verification samples in Figure 37). If at least two of these three verification samples detect a logic low, a valid start bit is assumed to have been detected (by a logic low following the three start qualifiers) as shown in Figure 37; however, if in two or more of the verification samples a logic high is detected, the line is assumed to be idle. A noise flag is set if one of the three verification samples detects a logic high; thus a valid start bit could be assumed and a noise flag still set. The receiver clock generator is controlled by the baud rate register (see Figures 41 and 42); however, the serial communications interface is synchronized by the start bit (independent of the transmitter).
Once a valid start bit is detected, the start bit, each data bit, and the stop bit are sampled three times at RT intervals of $8 R \mathrm{R}$, 9RT, and 10RT (IRT is the position where the bit is expected to start) as shown
in Figure 38. The value of the bit is determined by voting logic which takes the value of the majority of samples (two or three out of three). A noise flag is set when all three samples on a valid start bit or a
data bit or the stop bit do not agree. As discussed above, a noise flag is also set when the start bit verifications samples do not agree.


Figure 37 - Examples of Start Bit Sampling Technique

| Previous Bit | Present Bit | Samples |  |  | Next Bit |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| RDI |  | V | V | V |  |  |
| 16 | 1 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 16 | 1 |
| R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| T | T | T | T | T | T | T |

Figure 38 - Sampling Techniques Used on All Bits

## Start Bit Detection Following a Framing Error

If there has been a framing error without detection of a break ( 10 zeros for 8 -bit format or 11 zeros for 9 -bit format), the circuit continues to operate as if there actually were a stop bit and the start edge will be placed artificially. The last bit received in the data shift register is inverted to a logic one, and the three logic one start qualifiers (shown in Figure 37) are
forced into the sample shift register during the interval when detection of a start bit is anticipated (see Figure 39); therefore the start bit will be accepted no sooner than it is anticipated.

If the receiver detects that break ( $\mathrm{RDRF}=1, \mathrm{FE}=1$, receiver data register $=\$ 00$ ) produced the framing error, the start bit will not be artificially induced and the receiver must actually receive a logic one bit before start. See Figure 40.

(a) Case 1, Receive Line Low During Artificial Edge

Figure 39-SCI Artificial Start Following a Framing Error

(b) Case 2, Receive Line High During Expected Start Edge

Figure 39-SCI Artificial Start Following a Framing Error


Figure 40-SCI Start Bit Following a Break

## Transmit Data Out (TDO)

Transmit data out is the serial data which is presented from the internal data bus via the serial communications interface (SCI) to the output pin. Data format is as discussed above and shown in Figure 36. The transmitter generates a bit time by using a derivative of the RT clock, thus producing a transmission rate equal to $1 / 16$ that of the receiver sample clock.

## Registers

There are five different registers used in the serial communications interface (SCI) and the internal configuration of these registers is discussed in the following paragraphs. A block diagram of the SCI system is shown in Figure 41.

## Serial Communications Data Register (SCDAT)

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Serial Communications Data Register |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

The serial communications data register (SCDAT) performs two functions in the serial communications interface; i.e., it acts as the receive data register when it is read and as the transmit data register when it is written. Figure 41 shows this register as two separate registers, namely: the receive data register (RDR) and the transmit data register (TDR). As shown in Figure 41 the TDR (transmit data register) provides
the parallel interface from the internal data bus to the transmit shift register, and the receive data register ( RDR ) provides the interface from the receive shift register to the internal data bus.

When SCDAT is read, it becomes the receive data register and contains the last byte of data received. The receive data register, represented above, is a read-only register containing the last byte of data received from the shift register for the internal data bus. The RDRF bit (receive data register full bit in the serial communications status register) is set to indicate that a byte has been transferred from the input serial shift register to the serial communications data register. The transfer is synchronized with the receiver bit rate clock (from the receive control) as shown in Figure 41. All data is received, least-significant-bit first.

When SCDAT is written, it becomes the transmit data register and contains the next byte of data to be transmitted. The transmit data register, also represented above, is a write-only register containing the next byte of data to be applied to the transmit shift register from the internal data bus. As long as the transmitter is enabled, data stored in the serial communications data register is transferred to the transmit shift register (after the current byte in the shift register has been transmitted). The transfer from the SCDAT to the transmit shift register is synchronized with the bit rate clock (from the transmit control) as shown in Figure 41. All data is transmitted least-significant-bit first.


NOTE: The Serial Communications Data Register (SCDAT) is controlled by the internal R/W signal. It is the transmit data register when written and receive data register when read.

Figure 41 - Serial Communications Interface Block Diagram

## Serial Communications Control Register 1 (SCCR1)

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| R8 | T8 | - | M | WAKE | - | - | - |

The serial communications control register 1 (SCCR1) provides the control bits which: 1) determine the word length (either 8 or 9 bits), and 2) select the method used for the wake-up feature. Bits 6 and 7 provide a location for storing the ninth bit for longer bytes.

Bit 7 R8 If the $M$ bit is a one, then this bit provides a storage location for the ninth bit in the receive data byte. Reset does not affect this bit.

Bit 6 T8 If the $M$ bit is a one, then this bit provides a storage location for the ninth bit in the transmit data byte. Reset does not affect this bit.

Bit 4 M The option of the word length is selected by the configuration of this bit and is shown below. Reset does not affect this bit.
$0=1$ start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit $1=1$ start bit, 9 data bits, 1 stop bit

Bit 3 WAKE This bit allows the user to select the method for receiver "wake up". If the WAKE bit is a logic zero, an idle line condition will "wake up" the receiver. If the WAKE bit is set to a logic one, the system acknowledges an address bit (most significant bit). The address bit is dependent on both the WAKE bit and the M bit level (table shown below).

Additionally, the receiver does not use the wake-up feature unless the RWU control bit in serial communications control register 2 is set as discussed below. Reset does not affect this bit.

## Wake M Method of Receiver "Wake-Up"

$0 \quad \mathrm{X}$ Detection of an idle line allows the next data byte received to cause the receive data register to fill and produce an RDRF flag.

10 Detection of a received one in the eighth data bit allows an RDRF flag and associated error flags.

1 Detection of a received one in the ninth data bit allows an RDRF flag and associated error flags.

Serial Communications Control Register 2 (SCCR2)

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| TIE | TCIE | RIE | ILIE | TE | RE | RWU | SBK |

The serial communications control register 2 (SCCR2) provides the control bits which individually enable/disable the transmitter or receiver, enable the system interrupts, and provide the wake-up enable bit and a "send break code" bit. Each of these bits is described below. The individual flags are discussed in the description of the serial communications status register.

Bit 7 TIE When the transmit interrupt enable (TIE) bit is set, the SCl interrupt occurs provided the transmit data register empty (TDRE) bit is set (Figure 41). When TIE is clear, the TDRE interrupt is disabled. Reset clears the TIE bit.

Bit 6 TCIE When the transmission complete interrupt enable (TCIE) bit is set, the SCl interrupt occurs provided the transmit complete (TC) bit is set (see Figure 41). When TCIE is clear, the TC interrupt is disabled. Reset clears the TCIE bit.

Bit 5 RIE When the receive interrupt enable (RIE) is set, the SCI interrupt occurs provided the overrun (OR) error bit or receive data register full (RDRF) bit is set (see Figure 41). When RIE is clear, the OR and RDRF interrupts are disabled. Reset clears the RIE bit.

Bit 4 ILIE When the idle line interrupt enable (ILIE) bit is set, the SCl interrupt occurs provided IDLE is set (see Figure 41). When ILIE is clear, the IDLE interrupt is disabled. Reset clears the ILIE bit.

Bit 3 TE When the transmit enable (TE) bit is set, the transmit shift register output is applied to the TDO line. Depending on the state of control bit $M$ in serial communications control register 1 , a preamble of $10(M=0)$ or 11 ( $\mathrm{M}=1$ ) consecutive ones is transmitted when software sets the TE bit from a cleared state. If a transmission is in progress, and TE is written to a zero, then the transmitter will wait until after the present byte had been transmitted before placing the TDO pin in the idle high-impedance state. If the TE bit has been written to a zero and then set to one before the
current byte is transmitted, the transmitter will wait until that byte is transmitted and will then initiate transmission of a new preamble. After the preamble is transmitted, and provided the TDRE bit is set (no new data to transmit), the line remains idle (driven high while TE=1); otherwise, normal transmission occurs. This function allows the user to "neatly" terminate a transmission sequence. After loading the last byte in the serial communications data register and receiving the interrupt from transmit data register empty (TDRE), indicating the data has been transferred into the shift register, the user should clear TE. The last byte will then be transmitted and the line will go idle (high impedance). Reset clears the TE bit.
Bit 2 RE When the receive enable (RE) bit is set, the receiver is enabled. When RE is clear, the receiver is disabled and all of the status bits associated with the receiver (RDRF, IDLE, OR, NF, and FE) are inhibited. Reset clears the RE bit.

Bit 1 RWU When the receiver wake-up (RWU) bit is set, it enables the "wake up" function. The type of "wake up" mode for the receiver is determined by the WAKE bit discussed above in the SCCR1. When the RWU bit is set, no status flags will be set. Flags which were set previously will not be cleared when RWU is set. If the WAKE bit is cleared, RWU is cleared after receiving $10(M=0)$ or $11(M=1)$ consecutive ones. Under these conditions, RWU cannot be set if the line is idle. If the WAKE bit is set, RWU is cleared after receiving an address bit. The receive data register full (RDRF) flag will then be set and the address byte will be stored in the receiver data register. Reset clears the RWU bit.

Bit 0 SBK When the send break (SBK) is set, the transmitter sends zeros in some number equal to a multiple of the data format bits. If the SKB bit is toggled set and clear, the transmitter sends $10(M=0)$ or $1(M=1)$ zeros and then reverts to idle or sending data. The actual number of zeros sent when SBK is toggled depends on the data format set by the $M$ bit in the serial communications control regis-
ter 1; therefore, the break code will be synchronous with respect to the data stream. At the completion of the break code, the transmitter sends at least one high bit to guarantee recognition of a valid start bit. Reset clears the SBK bit.

## Serial Communications Status Register (SCSR)

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| TDRE | TC | RDRF | IDLE | OR | NF | FE | - |

The serial communications status register (SCSR) provides inputs to the interrupt logic circuits for generation of the SCI system interrupt. In addition, a noise flag bit and a framing error bit are also contained in the SCSR.

Bit 7 TDRE The transmit data register empty (TDRE) bit is set to indicate that the contents of the serial communications data register have been transferred to the transmit serial shift register. If the TDRE bit is clear, it indicates that the transfer has not yet occurred and a write to the serial communications data register will overwrite the previous value. The TDRE bit is cleared by accessing the serial communications status register (with TDRE set), followed by writing to the serial communications data register. Data can not be transmitted unless the serial communications status register is accessed before writing to the serial communications data register to clear the TDRE flag bit. Reset sets the TDRE bit.
Bit 6 TC The transmit complete (TC) bit is set at the end of a data frame, preamble, or break condition if:

1. Transmit enable (TE) $=1$, transmit data register empty (TDRE) = 1 , and no pending data, preamble, or break is to be transmitted; or
2. Transmit enable $(T E)=0$, and the data, preamble, or break (in the transmit shift register) has been transmitted.
The TC bit is a status flag which indicates that one of the above conditions has occurred. The TC bit is cleared by accessing the serial communications status register (with

TC set), followed by writing to the serial communications data register. It does not inhibit the transmitter function in any way. Reset sets the TC bit.

Bit 5 RDRF When the receive data register full (RDRF) bit is set, it indicates that the receiver serial shift register is transferred to the serial communications data register. If multiple errors are detected in any one received word, the noise flag (NF), framing error (FE), and RDRF bits will be affected as appropriate during the same clock cycle. The RDRF bit is cleared when the serial communications status register is accessed (with RDRF set) followed by a read of the serial communications data register. Reset clears the RDRF bit.

Bit 4 IDLE When the idle line detect bit is set, it indicates that a receiver idle line is detected (receipt of a minimum number of ones to constitute the number of bits in the byte format). The minimum number of ones needed will be $10(\mathrm{M}=0)$ or $11(\mathrm{M}=1)$. This allows a receiver that is not in the wake-up mode to detect the end of a message, detect the preamble of a new message, or to resynchronize with the transmitter. The IDLE bit is cleared by accessing the serial communications status register (with IDLE set) followed by a read of the serial communications data register. The IDLE bit will not be set again until after the receive data register full (RDRF) bit has been set; i.e., a new idle line occurs. The IDLE bit is not set by an idle line when the receiver "wakes up" from the wake-up mode. Reset clears the IDLE bit.

Bit 3 OR When the overrun (OR) error bit is set, it indicates that the next byte is ready to be transferred from the receive shift register to the serial communications data register when it is already full (RDRF bit is set). Data transfer is then inhibited until the RDRF bit is cleared. Data in the serial communications data register is valid in this case, but additional data received during an overrun condition (including the byte causing the overrun) will be lost. The OR bit
is cleared when the serial communications status register is accessed (with OR set), followed by a read of the serial communications data register. Reset clears the OR bit.

Bit 2 NF The noise flag (NF) bit is set if there is noise on a "valid" start bit or if there is noise on any of the data bits or if there is noise on the stop bit. It is not set by noise on the idle line nor by invalid (false) start bits. If there is noise, the NF bit is not set until the receive data register full (RDRF) flag is set. Each data bit is sampled three times as described above in RECEIVE DATA IN and shown in Figure 38. The NF bit represents the status of the byte in the serial communications data register. For the byte being received (shifted in) there will also be a "working" noise flag, the value of which will be transferred to the NF bit when the serial data is loaded into the serial communications data register. The NF bit does not generate an interrupt because the RDRF bit gets set with NF and can be used to generate the interrupt. The NF bit is cleared when the serial communications status register is accessed (with NF set), followed by a read of the serial communications data register. Reset clears the NF bit.

Bit 1 FE The framing error (FE) bit is set when the byte boundaries in the bit stream are not synchronized with the receiver bit counter (generated by a "lost" stop bit). The byte is transferred to the serial communications data register and the receive data register full (RDRF) bit is set. The FE bit does not generate an interrupt because the RDRF bit is set at the same time as FE and can be used to generate the interrupt. Notice that if the byte received causes a framing error and it will also cause an overrun if transferred to the serial communications data register, then the overrun bit will be set, but not the framing error bit, and the byte will not be transferred to the serial communications data register. The FE bit is cleared when the serial communications status register is accessed (with FE set)
followed by a read of the serial communications data register. Reset clears the FE bit.

## Baud Rate Register

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| - | - | SCP1 | SCP0 | - | SCR2 | SCR1 | SCR0 |

The baud rate register provides the means for selecting different baud rates which may be used as the rate control for the transmitter and receiver. The SCP0-SCP1 bits function as prescaler for the SCR0SCR2 bits. Together these five bits provide multiple baud rate combinations for a given crystal frequency.

Bit 5 SCP1 These two bits in the baud rate register are used as a prescaler to in-
Bit 4 SCPO crease the range of standard baud SCPO rates controlled by the SCROSCR2 bits. A table of the prescaler internal processor clock division versus bit levels is provided below. Reset clears SCP1-SCP0 bits (divide-by-one).

| SCP1 | SCP0 | Internal Processor <br> Clock Divide By |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 0 | 1 | 3 |
| 1 | 0 | 4 |
| 1 | 1 | 13 |

Bit 2 SCR2 These three bits in the baud rate register are used to select the baud
Bit 1 SCR1 rates of both the transmitter and receiver. A table of baud rates
Bit 0 SCRO versus bit levels is shown below. Reset does not affect the SCR2SCRO bits.

| SCR2 | SCR1 | SCR0 | Prescaler Output Divide By |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 2 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 4 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 8 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 16 |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 32 |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 64 |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 128 |

The diagram of Figure 42 and Tables III and IV illustrate the divided chain used to obtain the baud rate clock (transmit clock). Notice that there is a fixed rate divide-by- 16 between the receive clock ( RT ) and the transmit clock ( Tx ). The actual divider chain is controlled by the combined SCP0-SCP1 and SCR0-SCR2 bits in the baud rate register as illustrated. All divided frequencies shown in the first table represent the final transmit clock (the actual baud rate) resulting from the internal processor clock division shown in the "divide-by" column only (prescaler division only). The second table illustrates how the prescaler output can be further divided by action of the SCI select bits (SCR0-SCR2). For example, assume that a 9600 Hz baud rate is required with a 2.4576 MHz external crystal. In this case the prescaler bits (SCP0-SCP1) could be configured as a divide-by-one or a divide-by-four. If a divide-by-four prescaler is used, then the SCR0-SCR2 bits must be configured as a divide-by-two. This results in a divide-by-128 of the internal processor clock to produce a 9600 Hz baud rate clock. Using the same crystal, the 9600 baud rate can be obtained with a prescaler divide-by-one and the SCR0-SCR2 bits configured for a divide-by-eight.

NOTE: The crystal frequency is internally divided-by-two to generate the internal processor clock.


Figure 42-Rate Generator Division

Table III - Prescaler Highest Baud Rate Frequency Output

| SCP Bit |  | Clock* Divided By | Crystal Frequency MHz |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 0 |  | 4.194304 | 4.0 | 2.4576 | 2.0 | 1.8432 |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 131.072 kHz | 125.000 kHz | 76.80 kHz | 62.50 kHz | 57.60 kHz |
| 0 | 1 | 3 | 43.691 kHz | 41.666 kHz | 25.60 kHz | 20.833 kHz | 19.20 kHz |
| 1 | 0 | 4 | 32.768 kHz | 31.250 kHz | 19.20 kHz | 15.625 kHz | 14.40 kHz |
| 1 | 1 | 13 | 10.082 kHz | 9600 Hz | 5.907 kHz | 4800 Hz | 4430 Hz |

*The clock in the "Clock Divided By" column is the internal processor clock.

NOTE: The divided frequencies shown in Table III represent baud rates which are the highest transmit baud rate (Tx) that can be obtained by a specific crystal frequency and only using the prescaler division. Lower baud rates may be obtained by providing a further division using the SCl rate select bits as shown below for some representative prescaler outputs.

Table IV - Transmit Baud Rate Output for a Given Prescaler Output

| SCR Bits |  |  | Divide By | Representative Highest Prescaler Baud Rate Output |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | 1 | 0 |  | 131.072 kHz | 32.768 kHz | 76.80 kHz | 19.20 kHz | 9600 Hz |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 131.072 kHz | 32.768 kHz | 76.80 kHz | 19.20 kHz | 9600 Hz |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 65.536 kHz | 16.384 kHz | 38.40 kHz | 9600 Hz | 4800 Hz |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 4 | 32.768 kHz | 8.192 kHz | 19.20 kHz | 4800 Hz | 2400 Hz |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 8 | 16.384 kHz | 4.096 kHz | 9600 Hz | 2400 Hz | 1200 Hz |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 16 | 8.192 kHz | 2.048 kHz | 4800 Hz | 1200 Hz | 600 Hz |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 32 | 4.096 kHz | 1.024 kHz | 2400 Hz | 600 Hz | 300 Hz |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 64 | 2.048 kHz | 512 Hz | 1200 Hz | 300 Hz | 150 Hz |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 128 | 1.024 kHz | 256 Hz | 600 Hz | 150 Hz | 75 Hz |

NOTE: Table IV illustrates how the SCl select bits can be used to provide lower transmitter baud rates by further dividing the prescaler output frequency. The five examples are only representative samples. In all cases, the baud rates shown are transmit baud rates (transmit clock) and the receiver clock is 16 times higher in frequency than the actual baud rate.

## Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)

The CDP68HC05C4 and CDP68HC05D2 microcomputers feature a serial peripheral interface (SPI) for communication with peripherals and MCUs. The SPI is a four-wire synchronous communication system with separate lines for input data, output data, clock, and slave select. A master MCU initiates the exchange of data bytes with a slave MCU, a peripheral device such as a RAM or real-time clock, or another master (which is in the slave mode during communication). In the SPI format, the clock is not included in the data stream and must be furnished as a separate signal. The master MCU produces the clocking signal to synchronize data transfer. Any device on the bus may be either a master or a slave, but at any one time, only one device is designated as the bus master. The serial bus is an efficient way to transfer data because few pins are needed.

## SPI Features

- Full duplex, three-wire synchronous transfers
- Master or slave operation
- 1.05 MHz (maximum) master bit frequency
- 2.1 MHz (maximum) slave bit frequency
- Four programmable master bit rates
- Programmable clock polarity and phase
c End of transmission interrupt flag
- Write collision flag protection
- Master-Master mode fault protection capability

Figure 43 illustrates two different system configurations. Figure 43a represents a system of five different MCUs in which there are one master and four slaves ( $0,1,2,3$ ). Figure $43 b$ represents a system of five MCUs in which three can be master or slave and two are slave only. The SPI system transfers data synchronously over two data I/O lines, master-in/slave-out (MISO) and master-out/slave-in (MOSI), with a serial clock line (SCK) for synchronization. A slave-select $(\overline{\mathrm{SS}})$ line is included to prevent bus contention. Notice that all $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ pins are connected to a port pin of a master/slave device. In this case any of the devices can be a slave.

b. Three Master/Slave, Two Slaves

Figure 43 - Master-Slave System Configuration

Figure 44 shows a very simple connection diagram of a master device with a slave device. All pins of the same mnemonic are connected together on master and slave. Notice that the master $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ pin is tied to a logic high and the slave $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ pin is a logic low. Only the master can generate the clocking signal for data transfer to and from the slave. Each time the master loads its shift register, eight clock pulses are generated to shift this data out. As the data is shifted out
of the master's shift register, it is shifted into the slave's shift register. At the same time, the data that was previously in the slave's shift register is shifted into the master's shift register. The result of this transfer is that the data in the master and slave shift registers are exchanged. In this way, a master controls data flow to and from the other devices in the system.


Figure 44 - Serial-Peripheral-Interface Master/Slave Interconnection

## Serial Peripheral Interface Signal Description

The four basic signals (MOSI, MISO, SCK, and, $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ ) discussed above are described in detail in the following paragraphs. Each signal function is described for both the master and slave modes.

## Master Out Slave In (MOSI)

The MOSI pin is configured as a data output in a master (mode) device and as a data input in a slave (mode) device. In this manner data is transferred serially from a master to a slave on this line; most significant bit first, least significant bit last. As shown
in Figure 45, four possible timing relationships may be chosen by using control bits CPOL and CPHA. The master device always allows data to be applied on the MOSI line a half-cycle before the clock edge (SCK) in order for the slave device to latch the data.

## NOTE

Both the slave device(s) and a master device must be programmed to similar timing modes for proper data transfer.

When the master device transmits data to a second (slave) device via the MOSI line, the slave device


Figure 45 - Data Clock Timing Diagram
responds by sending data to the master device via the MISO line. This implies full duplex transmission with both data out and data in synchronized with the same clock signal (one which is provided by the master device). Thus, the byte transmitted is replaced by the byte received and eliminates the need for separate transmit-empty and receive-full status bits. A single status bit (SPIF) is used to signify that the I/O operation is complete.

Configuration of the MOSI pin is a function of the MSTR bit in the serial peripheral control register (SPCR). When a device is operating as a master, and the DDR bit is set in the case of the CDP68HC05D2, the MOSI pin is an output because the program in firmware sets the MSTR bit to a logic one.

## Master In Slave Out (MISO)

The MISO pin is configured as an input in a master (mode) device and as an output in a slave (mode) device. In this manner, data is transferred serially from slave to a master on this line; most significant bit first, least significant bit last. The MISO pin of a slave device is placed in the high-impedance state if it is not selected by the master; i.e., its $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ pin is a logic one. The timing diagram of Figure 45 shows the relationship between data and clock (SCK). As shown in Figure 45 , four possible timing relationships may be chosen by using control bits CPOL and CPHA. The master device always allows data to be applied on the MOSI line a half-cycle before the clock edge (SCK) in order for the slave device to latch the data.

## NOTE

The slave device(s) and a master device must be programmed to similar timing modes for proper data transfer.

When the master device transmits data to a slave device via the MOSI line, the slave device responds by sending data to the master device via the MISO line. This implies full duplex transmission with both data out and data in synchronized with the same clock signal (one which is provided by the master device). Moreover, the same shift register is used for data out and data in. Thus, the byte transmitted is replaced by the byte received and eliminates the need for separate transmit-empty and receive-full status bits. A single status bit (SPIF) in the serial peripheral status register (SPSR) is used to signify that the I/O operation is complete.

In the master device, the MSTR control bit in the serial peripheral control register (SPCR) is set to a logic one (by the program) to allow the master device to receive data on its MISO pin. In the slave device, its MISO pin is enabled by the logic level of the $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ pin; i.e., if $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}=1$ then the MISO pin is placed in the high-impedance state, whereas, if $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}=$ 0 the MISO pin is an output for the slave device (only if the DDR bit is set in the case of the CDP68HC05D2).

## Slave Select (ISS)

The slave select ( $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ ) pin is a fixed input (PD5, pin 34), which receives an active low signal that is generated by the master device to enable slave device(s) to accept data. To ensure that data will be accepted by a slave device, the $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ signal line must be a logic low prior to occurrence of SCK (system clock) and must remain low until after the last (eighth) SCK cycle. Figure 45 illustrates the relationship between SCK and the data for two different level combinations of CPHA, when $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ is pulled low. These are: 1) with CPHA = 1 or 0 , the first bit of data (MSB) is applied to the MISO line for transfer, and 2) when CPHA = 0 the slave device is prevented from writing to its data register. Refer to the WCOL status flag in the serial peripheral status register description for further information on the effects that the $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ input and CPHA control bit have on the I/O data register. The WCOL flag warns the slave if it has had a conflict between a transmission and a write of the data register. A high level $\overline{\text { SS }}$ signal forces the MISO (master in slave out) line to the high-impedance state. Also, SCK and the MOSI (master out slave in) line are ignored by a slave device when its $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ signal is high.

When a device is a master, it constantly monitors its $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ signal input for a logic low. The master device will become a slave device any time its $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ signal input is detected low. This ensures that there is only one master controlling the $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ line for a particular system. When the $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ line is detected low, it clears the MSTR control bit (serial peripheral control register). Also, control bit SPE in the serial peripheral control register is cleared which causes the serial peripheral interface (SPI) to be disabled (Port D SPI pins become inputs). The MODF flag bit in the serial peripheral status register is also set to indicate to the master device that another device is attempting to become a master. Two devices attempting to be outputs are normally the result of a software error; however, a system could be configured which would contain a default master which would automatically "take over" and restart the system.

## Serial Clock - SCK

The serial clock is used to synchronize the movement of data both in and out of the device through its MOSI and MISO pins. The master and slave devices are capable of exchanging a data byte of information during a sequence of eight clock pulses. Because the SCK is generated by the master device, the SCK line becomes an input on all slave devices and synchronizes slave data transfer. The type of clock and its relationship to data are controlled by the CPOL and CPHA bits in the serial peripheral control register discussed below. Refer to Figure 45 for timing.

The master device generates the SCK through a circuit driven by the internal processor clock. Two
bits (SPR0 and SPR1) in the serial peripheral control register of the master device select the clock rate. The master device uses the SCK to latch incoming slave device data on the MISO line and shifts out data to the slave device on the MOSI line. Both master and slave devices must be operated in the same timing mode as controlled by the CPOL and CPHA bit in the serial peripheral control register. In the slave device, SPR0, SPR1 have no effect on the operation of the serial peripheral interface. Timing is shown in Figure 45.

## Serial Peripheral Interface Functional Description

A block diagram of the serial peripheral interface (SPI) is shown in Figure 46. A master device, once it has selected the other device(s) in the system, initiates the SCK signal by writing a byte to its SPDR. SCK is based on the internal processor clock and is used internally to control the state controller as well as the 8 -bit shift register. As a master device, data is parallel-loaded into the 8 -bit shift register (SPDR) from the internal bus, and shifted out serially through the MOSI pin to the slave device(s). While the shift is taking place, the master monitors the SPIF bit of the status register to determine when the data transfer is finished ( $\mathrm{SPIF}=1$ ). The data in the shift register of the slave device is simultaneously shifted out through the MISO pin, back to the master (full duplex operation). After the 8 -bit shift register is loaded, its data is parallel-transferred to the read buffer and then made available to the internal data bus during a CPU read cycle. When the master requests data from the slave, the slave writes the data, which will be shifted out by the master, into its SPDR. Because the master generates the SCK signal, it must do a dummy write to its SPDR to shift the data out of the slave.

In a slave configuration, the slave start logic receives a logic low (from a master device) at the $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ pin and a system clock input (from the same master device) at the SCK pin. Thus, the slave is synchronized with the master. Data from the master is received serially at the slave MOSI pin and loads the 8 -bit shift register. After the 8 -bit shift register is loaded, its data is parallel-transferred to the read buffer and then is made available to the internal data bus during a CPU read cycle. During a write cycle, data is parallel-loaded into the 8 -bit shift register from the internal data bus and then shifted out serially to the MISO pin for application to the master device.

## Serial Peripheral Interface Registers

There are three registers in the serial peripheral interface which provide control, status, and data storage functions. These registers are the serial peripheral control register (SPCR), serial peripheral status register (SPSR), and the serial peripheral data I/O register (SPDR).

## Serial Peripheral Control Register (SPCR)

| 1 | 6 | $5^{*}$ | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| SPIE | SPE | DWOM | MSTR | CPOL | CPHA | SPR1 | SPRO |

*Bit 5 is a feature of the CDP68HC05D2
The serial peripheral control register bits are defined as follows:

Bit 7 SPIE When the serial peripheral interrupt enable (SPIE) bit is high, it allows the occurrence of a processor interrupt, and forces the proper vector to be loaded into the program counter if the serial peripheral status register flag bit (SPIF and/or MODF) is set to a logic one. It does not inhibit the setting of a status bit. The SPIE bit is cleared by reset.

Bit 6 SPE When the serial peripheral output enable (SPE) control bit is set, all output drive is applied to the external pins and the system is enabled. When the SPE bit is set, it enables the SPI system by connecting it to the external pins thus allowing it to interface with the external SPI bus. The pins that are defined as output depend on the mode (master or slave) of the device. Because the SPE bit is cleared by reset, the SPI system is not connected to the external pins upon reset.

Bit 5 DWOM Port D wire-OR mode is available on the CDP68HC05D2. This bit controls the output buffers for Port D bits 2 through 5. If DWOM = 1, the four Port D output buffers behave as open-drain outputs. If DWOM = 0, the four Port D output buffers operate as normal CMOS outputs.

Bit 4 MSTR The master bit determines whether the device is a master or a slave. A logic zero denotes a slave device and a logic one denotes a master device. If the master mode is selected, the function of the SCK pin changes from an input to an output and the functions of the MISO and MOSI pins are reversed. This allows the user to wire device pins MISO to MISO, and MOSI to MOSI, and SCK to SCK without incident. The MSTR bit is cleared by reset; therefore, the device is always placed in the slave mode during reset.


NOTE: The $\overline{S S}$, SCK, MOSI, and MISO are external pins which provide the following functions:
a. MOSI - Provides serial output to slave unit(s) when device is configured as a master. Receives serial input from master unit when device is configured as a slave unit.
b. MISO - Receives serial input from slave unit(s) when device is configured as a master. Provides serial output to master when device is configured as a slave unit
c. SCK - Provides system clock when device is configured as a master unit. Receives system clock when device is configured as
a slave unit
d. $\overline{\mathrm{SS}} \quad$ - Provides a logic low to select a slave device for a transfer with a master device.

Figure 46 - Serial Peripheral Interface Block Diagram

Bit 3 CPOL The clock polarity bit controls the normal or steady state value of the clock when data is not being transferred. The CPOL bit affects both the master and slave modes. It must be used in conjunction with the clock phase control bit (CPHA) to produce the wanted clock-data relationship between a master and a slave device. When the CPOL bit is a logic zero, it produces a steady state low value at the SCK pin of the master device. If the CPOL bit is a logic one, a high value is produced at the SCK pin of the master device when data is not being transferred. The CPOL bit is not affected by reset. Refer to Figure 45.

Bit 2 CPHA The clock phase bit controls the relationship between the data on the MISO and MOSI pins and the clock produced or received at the SCK pin. This control has effect in both the master and slave modes. It must be used in conjunction with the clock polarity control bit (CPOL) to produce the wanted clock-data relation. The CPHA bit in general selects the clock edge which captures data and allows it to change states. It has its greatest impact on the first bit transmitted (MSB) in that it does or does not allow a clock transition before the first data capture edge. The CPHA bit is not affected by reset. Refer to Figure 45.

Bit 1 SPR1
Bit 0 SPRO

These two serial peripheral rate bits select one of four baud rates to be used as SCK if the device is a master; however, they have no affect in the slave mode. The slave device is capable of shifting data in and out at a maximum rate which is equal to the CPU clock. A rate table is given below for the generation of the SCK from the master. The SPR1 and SPR0 bits are not affected by reset.

| SPR1 |  | SPRO | Internal Processor <br> Clock Divide by |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 0 |  | 2 |
| 0 | 1 |  | 4 |
| 1 | 0 |  | 16 |
| 1 | 1 |  | 32 |

## Serial Peripheral Status Register (SPSR)

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| SPIF | WCOL | - | MODF | - | - | - | - |

The status flags which generate a serial peripheral interface (SPI) interrupt may be blocked by the SPIE control bit in the serial peripheral control register. The WCOL bit does not cause an interrupt. The serial peripheral status register bits are defined as follows:

Bit 7 SPIF The serial peripheral data transfer flag bit signals the user that a data transfer between the device and an external device has been completed. With the completion of the data transfer, SPIF is set, and if SPIE is set, a serial peripheral interrupt (SPI) is generated. During the clock cycle that SPIF is being set, a copy of the received data byte in the shift register is moved to a buffer. When the data register is read, it is the buffer that is read. During an overrun condition, when the master device has sent several bytes of data and the slave device has not responded to the first SPIF, only the first byte sent is contained in the receiver buffer and all other bytes are lost.

The transfer of data is initiated by the master device writing to its serial peripheral data register.

Clearing the SPIF bit is accomplished by a software sequence of accessing the serial peripheral status register while SPIF is set, followed by a write to or a read of the serial peripheral data register. While SPIF is set, all writes to the serial peripheral data register are inhibited until the serial peripheral status register is read. This occurs in the master device. In the slave device, SPIF can be cleared (using a similar sequence) during a second transmission; however, it must be cleared before the second SPIF in order to prevent an overrun condition. The SPIF bit is cleared by reset.

Bit 6 WCOL The function of the write collision status (WCOL) bit is to signal the user that an attempt was made to write to the serial peripheral data register while a data transfer was taking place with an external device.

The transfer continues uninterrupted; therefore, a write will be unsuccessful. A "read collision" will never occur since the received data byte is placed in a buffer in which access is always synchronous with the MCU operation. If a "write collision" occurs, WCOL is set but no SPI interrupt is generated. The WCOL bit is a status flag only.

Clearing the WCOL bit is accomplished by a software sequence of accessing the serial peripheral status register while WCOL is set, followed by 1) a read of the serial peripheral data register prior to the SPIF bit being set, or 2) a read or write of the serial peripheral data register after the SPIF bit is set. A write to the serial peripheral data register (SPDR) prior to the SPIF bit being set will result in generation of another WCOL status flag. Both the SPIF and WCOL bits will be cleared in the same sequence. If a second transfer has started while trying to clear (the previously set) SPIF and WCOL bits with a clearing sequence containing a write to the serial peripheral data register, only the SPIF bit will be cleared.

A collision of a write to the serial peripheral data register while an external data transfer is taking place can occur in both the master mode and the slave mode, although with proper programming the master device should have sufficient information to preclude this collision.

Collision in the master device is defined as a write of the serial peripheral data register while the internal rate clock (SCK) is in the process of transfer. The signal on the $\overline{S S}$ pin is always high on the master device.

A collision in a slave device is defined in two separate modes. One problem arises in a slave device when the CPHA control bit is a logic zero. When CPHA is a logic zero, data is latched with the occurrence of the first clock transition. The slave device does not have any way of knowing when that transition will occur; therefore, the slave device
collision occurs when it attempts to write to the serial peripheral data register after its $\overline{S S}$ pin has been pulled low. The $\overline{\text { SS }}$ pin of the slave device freezes the data in its serial peripheral data register and does not allow it to be altered if the CPHA bit is a logic zero. The master device must raise the $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ pin of the slave device high between each byte it transfers to the slave device.
The second collision mode is defined for the state of the CPHA control bit being a logic one. With the CPHA bit set, the slave device will be receiving a clock (SCK) edge prior to the latch of the first data transfer. This first clock edge will freeze the data in the slave device I/O register and allow the MSB onto the external MISO pin of the slave device. The $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ pin low state enables the slave device but the drive onto the MISO pin does not take place until the first data transfer clock edge. The WCOL bit will only be set if the I/O register is accessed while a transfer is taking place. By definition of the second collision mode, a master device might hold a slave device $\overline{\text { SS }}$ pin low during a transfer of several bytes of data without a problem
A special case of WCOL occurs in the slave device. This happens when the master device starts a transfer sequence (an edge of SCK for CPHA $=1$; or an active $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ transition for $\mathrm{CPHA}=0$ ) at the same time the slave device CPU is writing to its serial peripheral interface data register. In this case it is assumed that the data byte written (in the slave device serial peripheral interface) is lost and the contents of the slave device read buffer become the byte that is transferred. Because the master device receives back the last byte transmitted, the master device can detect that a fatal WCOL occurred.

Because the slave device is operating asynchronously with the master device, the WCOL bit may be used as an indicator of a collision occurrence. This helps alleviate the user from a strict real-time programming effort. The WCOL bit is cleared by reset.

Bit 4 MODF The function of the mode fault flag (MODF) is defined for the master mode device. If the device is a slave device, the MODF bit will be prevented from toggling from a logic zero to a logic one; however, this does not prevent the device from being in the slave mode with the MODF bit set. The MODF bit is normally a logic zero and is set only when the master device has its SS pin pulled low. Toggling the MODF bit to a logic one affects the internal serial peripheral interface (SPI) system in the following ways:

1. MODF is set and SPI interrupt is generated if $\mathrm{SPIE}=1$.
2. The SPE bit is forced to a logic zero. This blocks all output drive from the device, disables the SPI system.
3. The MSTR bit is forced to a logic zero, thus forcing the device into the slave mode.
4. Resets DDR bits for MISO, MOSI, CLR.
Clearing the MODF is accomplished by a software sequence of accessing the serial peripheral status register while MODF is set followed by a write to the serial peripheral control register. Control bits SPE and MSTR may be restored to their original set state during this clearing sequence or after the MODF bit has been cleared. Hardware does not allow the user to set the SPE and MSTR bit while MODF is a logic one unless it is during the proper clearing sequence. The MODF flag bit indicates that there might have been a multimaster conflict for system control and allows a proper exit from system operation to a reset or default system state. The MODF bit is cleared by reset.

## Serial Peripheral Data I/O Register (SPDR)

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | ---: | :---: |
| Serial Peripheral Data I/O Register |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

The serial peripheral data I/O register is used to transmit and receive data on the serial bus. Only a write to this register will initiate transmission/reception of another byte and this will only occur in the master device. A slave device writing to its data I/O register will not initiate a transmission. At the com-
pletion of transmitting a byte of data, the SPIF status bit is set in both the master and slave devices. A write or read of the serial peripheral data I/O register, after accessing the serial peripheral status register with SPIF set, will clear SPIF.

During the clock cycle that the SPIF bit is being set, a copy of the received data byte in the shift register is being moved to a buffer. When the user reads the serial peripheral data I/O register, the buffer is actually being read. During an overrun condition, when the master device has sent several bytes of data and the slave device has not internally responded to clear the first SPIF, only the first byte is contained in the receive buffer of the slave device; all others are lost. The user may read the buffer at any time. The first SPIF must be cleared by the time a second transfer of data from the shift register to the read buffer is initiated or an overrun condition will exist.
A write to the serial peripheral data $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ register is not buffered and places data directly into the shift register for transmission.
The ability to access the serial peripheral data I/O register is limited when a transmission is taking place. It is important to read the discussion defining the WCOL and SPIF status bits to understand the limits on using the serial peripheral data I/O register.

## Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) System Considerations

There are two types of SPI systems: single master system and multi-master systems. Figure 43 illustrates both of these systems and a discussion of each is provided below.

Figure 43a illustrates how a typical single master system may be configured, using a CDP 6805 CMOS Family device as the master and four CDP6805 CMOS Family devices as slaves. As shown, the MOSI, MISO, and SCK pins are all wired to equivalent pins on each of the five devices. The master device generates the SCK clock, the slave devices all receive it. Because the CDP6805 CMOS master device is the bus master, it internally controls the function of its MOSI and MISO lines, thus writing data to the slave devices on the MOSI and reading data from the slave devices on the MISO lines. The master device selects the individual slave devices by using four pins of a parallel port to control the four $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ pins of the slave devices. A slave device is selected when the master device pulls its $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ pin low. The $\overline{\mathrm{SS}}$ pins are pulled high during reset because the master device ports will be forced to be inputs at that time, thus disabling the slave devices. Notice that the slave devices do not have to be enabled in a mutually exclusive fashion except to prevent bus contention on the MISO line. For example, three slave devices enabled for a transfer are permissible if only one has the capability of being read by the master. An example of this is a write to several display drivers to clear a display with a single I/O operation. To ensure that
proper data transmission is occurring between the master device and a slave device, the master device may have the slave device respond with a previously received data byte (this data byte could be inverted or at least be a byte that is different from the last one sent by the master device). The master device will always receive the previous byte back from the slave device if all MISO and MOSI lines are connected and the slave has not written to its data $/ / O$ register. Other transmission security methods might be defined using ports for handshake lines or data bytes with command fields.

A multi-master system may also be configured by the user. A system of this type is shown in Figure 43b. An exchange of master control could be implemented using a handshake method through the I/O ports or by an exchange of code messages through the serial peripheral interface system. The major device control that plays a part in this system is the MSTR bit in the serial peripheral control register and the MODF bit in the serial peripheral status register.

## CDP6805E2/E3 Microprocessor (MPU) External Bus Description

The CDP6805E2/E3 CMOS MPU does not contain on-chip non-volatile memory; however, by using the external multiplexed address-then-data bus, additional memory and peripherals may be added. In order to conserve pins, the CDP6805E2/E3 multiplexes the data bus with the eight lower address bits. The lower address bits appear on the bus first and are valid prior to the falling edge of address strobe (AS). Data is then transferred during data strobe (DS) high. The CDP6805E2/E3 latches read data ( $\mathrm{R} / \overline{\mathrm{W}}$ is high) on the falling edge of DS.

The CDP6805E2/E3 bus timing is generated from
the waveform at the OSC1 input. Figure 47 shows the relationship of the CDP6805E2/E3 bus timing to the OSC1 input. Because the CDP6805E2/E3 is a completely static device, it may be operated at any frequency below its maximum ( 1 MHz bus) rate. Because generating the timing specifications for all of the possible frequencies is impossible, Figure 47 can be used to estimate the effects on bus timing for the oscillator frequency ( $\mathrm{f}_{\text {osc }}$ ). For instance, decreasing $\mathrm{f}_{\text {osc }}$ increases the multiplexed address hold time since the multiplexed bus does not switch until a half OSC1 cycle after AS goes low. On the other hand, the required read data hold time is not a function of $\mathrm{f}_{\text {osc }}$.


Figure 47-OSC1 to Bus Transitions

## Self-Check

## Introduction

One of the advanced architectural features of the CDP6805 CMOS Family of microcomputers is the ability to test itself, using on-chip firmware. These programs are commonly referred to as self-check routines and subroutines, which are used for quick go/no-go functional tests of the individual microcomputer (MCU). The self-check routines functionally exercise the ports, RAM, ROM, timer, and interrupts, and where applicable, the SPI and SCI.

The CDP6805E2 and CDP6805E3 microprocessors do not contain on-chip ROM, and consequently do not include self-check routines.

The additional components and terminal connections necessary to support the self-check of each MCU are shown in their respective data sheets. The self-check routines are initiated by application of power to the test set-up, or by actuation of the reset switch. These self-check subroutines are initiated and automatically sequenced through their predetermined programs with individual results as noted in the data sheets.

Several of the self-check subroutines can be initiated by the user program. These user-callable subroutines are RAM, ROM, and timer (provided the timer is clocked by the internal clock) tests. One extremely valuable feature of the self-check is that it can be incorporated into the acceptance test of all CDP6805 CMOS Family devices (except CDP6805E2 and CDP6805E3) to provide go/no-go indications for the particular device.

The user-callable tests shown for the devices listed in Table V can be part of the normal power-up sequence, or included in the regular preventive maintenance schedule as well as the repair/service schedule for the user system. These self-check subroutines can be called by the user and merged into the overall system program without additional components or terminal connections. Table $V$ contains a list of microcomputers which have this self-check firmware. Also, the address to enter each user-callable selfcheck subroutine is listed with appropriate comments. Each self-check subroutine ends with the RTS instruction, and must be called by the BSR/JSR instruction from the user's main program.

Table V - Subroutine Entry Addresses

| MCU | RAM Test | ROM Test | Timer Test |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CDP6805F2 | \$078B | \$07A4 | \$07BE |
| CDP6805G2 | $\$ 1 F 87$ | \$1FA1 | \$1FBB |
| CDP68HC05C4 | - | \$1F93 | \$1F0E |
| CDP68HC05D2 | - | $\$ 1 F 93$ | \$1F0E |

(*) The timer clock source must be the internal clock.

## Self-Check Description

## RAM Self-Check

The RAM self-check routine performs a walkingbit diagnostic pattern, and when completed, the Z bit is cleared if any error was detected. If no error was detected, the Z bit is set. The RAM self-check routine overwrites the accumulator, index register, and RAM.

## ROM Self-Check

The ROM self-check performs an exclusive OR (odd parity) checksum and returns with the Z bit clear if any error was detected. If no error was detected, the Z bit is set. Refer to the individual data sheets for RAM or registers which are modified.

## Timer Self-Check

The timer self-check routine keeps track of the number of times the clock counts in some number of cycles. Because the timer has a prescaler, not every count is tested. The routine also detects a nonrunning timer condition. If an error is found, the Z bit is cleared; otherwise the Z bit is set indicating no error. The accumulator, the index register, and some RAM may be overwritten.

In order to work correctly as a user subroutine, the internal clock must be the clocking source, and interrupts must be disabled. At the end of the test, the clock may be running and interrupt mask cleared so the user may have to protect the program from interrupt. Refer to the individual part's data sheet for more information.

## Flowchart Example

An example of the timer test for the CDP6805G2 is shown flowcharted in Figure 48. The pass/fail
result can be utilized by the user program for system go/no-go considerations. Notice that previous values in the accumulator and index registers are lost.


Figure 48-CDP6805G2 MPU Timer Test (TIMTST) Flowchart

# Instruction Set Detailed Definition 

## Introduction

In the pages that follow this section, the various accumulator and memory operations, together with the respective mnemonic, provide a heading for each of the executable instructions. The pages are arranged in alphabetical order of the mnemonic. A brief description of the operation is provided along with other applicable pertinent information, including: condition code status, Boolean formula, source forms, usable addressing modes, number of execution cycles, number of bytes required, and the opcode for each usable addressing mode. The next section contains a listing of the various nomenclature (abbreviations and signs) used in the operations.

## Nomenclature

The following nomenclature is used in the executable instructions which follow this paragraph.
(a) Operators:

```
( ) indirection, i.e., (SP) means the value
    pointed to by SP
    - is loaded with (read: "gets")
    - Boolean AND
    v Boolean (inclusive) OR
    + Boolean EXCLUSIVE OR
    ~ Boolean NOT
    - negation (two's complement)
```

(b) Registers in the MPU:

ACCA Accumulator (shown as A in Boolean formula for condition codes and source forms)
CC Condition Code Register
X Index Register
PC Program Counter
PCH Program Counter High Byte
PCL Program Counter Low Byte
SP Stack Pointer
(c) Memory and Addressing:

M Contents of any memory location (one byte)
Rel Relative address (i.e., the two's complement number stored in the second byte of machine code in a branch instruction)
(d) Bits in the Condition Code Register:

C Carry/Borrow, Bit 0
Z Zero Indicator, Bit 1
N Negative Indicator, Bit 2
I Interrupt Mask, Bit 3
H Half Carry Indicator, Bit 4
(e) Status of Individual Bits BEFORE Execution of an Instruction:
An $\quad$ Bit n of ACCA $(\mathrm{n}=7,6,5,4,3,2,1,0)$
$\mathrm{Xn} \quad$ Bit n of $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{n}=7,6,5,4,3,2,1,0)$
$\mathrm{Mn} \quad$ Bit n of $\mathrm{M}(\mathrm{n}=7,6,5,4,3,2,1,0)$. In read/modify/write instructions, Mn is used to represent bit n of $\mathrm{M}, \mathrm{A}$ or X .
(f) Status of Individual Bits AFTER Execution of an Instruction:
$\mathrm{Rn} \quad$ Bit n of the result $(\mathrm{n}=7,6,5,4,3,2,1,0)$
(g) Source Forms:

P Operands with IMMediate, DIRect, EXTended and INDexed (0, 1, 2 byte offset) addressing modes
Q Operands with DIRect, INDexed (0 and 1 byte offset) addressing modes
dd Relative operands
DR Operands with DIRect addressing mode only
(h) iff Abbreviation for if and only if

## ADC (Add with Carry)

## Operation:

$\mathrm{ACCA}-\mathrm{ACCA}+\mathrm{M}+\mathrm{C}$

## Description:

Add the contents of the Carry/Borrow bit to the sum of the contents of the Accumulator and Memory, and place the result in the Accumulator.
Condition Codes:
$H$ : Set if there is a carry from bit 3 ; cleared otherwise.
I: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.
C: Set if there is a carry from the most significant bit of the result; cleared otherwise.
Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{H}=\mathrm{A} 3 \cdot \mathrm{M} 3 \mathrm{v}$ M3.R3vR3.A3
$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$
$\mathrm{C}=\mathrm{A} 7 \cdot \mathrm{M} 7 \mathrm{vM} 7 \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \mathrm{v} \overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \mathrm{~A} 7$
Source Form(s):
ADC P

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Immediate | 2 | 2 | A9 |
| Direct | 3 | 2 | B9 |
| Extended | 4 | 3 | C9 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 3 | 1 | F9 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 4 | 2 | E9 |
| Indexed 2-Byte | 5 | 3 | D9 |

## ADD (Add)

## Operation:

ACCA $\leftarrow \mathrm{ACCA}+\mathrm{M}$

## Description:

Add the contents of the Accumulator and the contents of Memory and place the result in the Accumulator.

## Condition Codes:

H : Set if there is a carry from bit 3 ; cleared otherwise.
I: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.

## ADD (Add) (Cont'd)

C: Set if there is a carry from the most significant bit of the result; cleared otherwise.

Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{H}=\mathrm{A} 3 \cdot \mathrm{M} 3 \mathrm{vM} 3 \cdot \mathrm{R} 3 \mathrm{vR} 3$. A 3
$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$
$\mathrm{C}=\mathrm{A} 7 \cdot \mathrm{M} 7 \mathrm{vM} 7 \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \mathrm{v} \overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \mathrm{~A} 7$
Source Form(s):
ADD P

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Immediate | 2 | 2 | AB |
| Direct | 3 | 2 | BB |
| Extended | 4 | 3 | CB |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 3 | 1 | FB |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 4 | 2 | EB |
| Indexed 2-Byte | 5 | 3 | DB |

## AND (Logical AND)

Operation:
ACCA $\leftarrow$ ACCA • M
Description:
Perform logical AND between the contents of the Accumulator and the contents of Memory and place the result in the Accumulator. Each bit of the Accumulator after the operation will be the logical AND result of the corresponding bits of Memory and of the Accumulator before the operation.

## Condition Codes:

H, I, C: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.

Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$
Source Form(s):
AND P

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Immediate | 2 | 2 | A4 |
| Direct | 3 | 2 | B4 |
| Extended | 4 | 3 | C4 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 3 | 1 | F4 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 4 | 2 | E4 |
| Indexed 2-Byte | 5 | 3 | D4 |

## ASL (Arithmetic Shift Left)

Operation:


Description:
Shift all bits of the Accumulator, Index Register, or Memory one place to the left. Bit 0 is loaded with a zero. The Carry/Borrow bit is loaded from the most significant bit of the Accumulator, Index Register, or Memory.

## Condition Codes:

H, I: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.
C: Set if, before the operation, the most significant bit of ACCA, X or M, were set; cleared otherwise.

Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$
$\mathrm{C}=\mathrm{b} 7$ (before operation)
Comments:
Same opcode as LSL
Source Form(s):
ASL Q, ASLA, ASLX

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Accumulator | 3 | 1 | 48 |
| Index Register | 3 | 1 | 58 |
| Direct | 5 | 2 | 38 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 5 | 1 | 78 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 6 | 2 | 68 |

## ASR (Arithmetic Shift Right)



## Description:

Shift all bits of the Accumulator, Index Register, or Memory one place to the right. Bit 7 is held constant. Bit 0 is loaded into the Carry/Borrow bit.
Condition Codes:
H, I: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.

## ASR (Arithmetic Shift Right) (Cont'd)

C: Set if, before the operation, the least significant bit of ACCA, X or M were set; cleared otherwise.

Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$
$\mathrm{C}=\mathrm{b} 0$ (before operation)
Source Form(s):
ASR Q, ASRA, ASRX

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Accumulator | 3 | 1 | 47 |
| Index Register | 3 | 1 | 57 |
| Direct | 5 | 2 | 37 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 5 | 1 | 77 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 6 | 2 | 67 |

## BCC (Branch if Carry Clear)

Operation:
$\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+0002+$ Rel iff $\mathrm{C}=0$

## Description:

Test the state of the Carry/Borrow bit and cause a branch if and only if C is clear. See BRA instruction for further details of the execution of the branch.
Condition Codes:
Not affected.

## Comments:

Same opcode as BHS
Source Form(s):
BCC dd

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Relative | 3 | 2 | 24 |

## BCLRn (Clear Bit in Memory)

Operation:
$\mathrm{Mn} \leftarrow 0$

## Description:

Clear bit $\mathrm{n}(\mathrm{n}=0-7)$ in memory location M. All other bits in M are unaffected.
Condition Codes:
Not affected.
Source Form(s):
BCLR n, DR

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Direct | 5 | 2 | $11+2 \mathrm{n}$ |


| (Branch if Carry Set) |
| :--- |
| Operation: |
| PC $-\mathrm{PC}+0002+$ Rel iff $\mathrm{C}=1$ |
| Description: |
| Test the state of the Carry / Borrow bit and cause a |
| branch if and only if C is set. See BRA instruction |
| for further details of the execution of the branch. |
| Condition Codes: |
| Not affected. |
| Comments: |
| Same opcode as BLO |
| Source Form(s): |
| BCS dd |
| Addressing Mode |
| Relative |

## BEQ (Branch if Equal)

Operation:
$\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+0002+$ Rel iff $\mathrm{Z}=1$
Description:
Test the state of the Zero Indicator bit and cause a branch if and only if Z is set. Following a compare or subtract instruction BEQ will cause a branch if the arguments were equal. See BRA instruction for further details of the execution of the branch.

## Condition Codes:

Not affected.
Source Form(s):
BEQ dd

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Relative | 3 | 2 | 27 |

## BHCC (Branch if Half Carry Clear)

Operation:
$\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+0002+$ Rel iff $\mathrm{H}=0$
Description:
Test the state of the Half Carry Indicator bit and cause a branch if and only if H is clear. See BRA instruction for further details of the execution of the branch.

Condition Codes:
Not affected.

| BHCC | (Branch if Half Carry Clear) (Cont'd) |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Source Form(s): <br> BHCC dd |  |  |  |
| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| Relative | 3 | 2 | 28 |

## BHCS <br> (Branch if Half Carry Set)

Operation:
$\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+0002+$ Rel iff $\mathrm{H}=1$

## Description:

Test the state of the Half Carry Indicator bit and cause a branch if and only if $H$ is set. See BRA instruction for further details of the execution of the branch.

Condition Codes:
Not affected.
Source Form(s):
BHCS dd

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Relative | 3 | 2 | 29 |

## BHI (Branch if Higher)

Operation:
$\mathrm{PC}-\mathrm{PC}+0002+$ Rel iff $(\mathrm{C} v \mathrm{Z})=0$
i.e., if ACCA $>\mathrm{M}$ (unsigned binary numbers)

## Description:

Cause a branch if and only if both Carry/Borrow and Zero Indicator are zero. If the BHI instruction is executed immediately after execution of either of the CMP or SUB instructions, the branch will occur if and only if the unsigned binary number represented by the minuend (i.e., Accumulator) is greater than the unsigned binary number represented by the subtrahend (i.e., Memory). See BRA instruction for further details of the execution of the branch.

## Condition Codes:

Not affected.
Source Form(s):
BHI dd

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Relative | 3 | 2 | 22 |

## BHS (Branch if Higher or Same)

## Operation:

$\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+0002+$ Rel iff $\mathrm{C}=0$

## Description:

Following an unsigned compare or subtract, BHS will cause a branch if and only if the register being compared is higher than or the same as the location in memory. See BRA instruction for further details of the execution of the branch.

## Condition Codes:

Not affected.
Comments:
Same opcode as BCC
Source Form(s):
BHS dd

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Relative | 3 | 2 | 24 |

## BIH (Branch if Interrupt Line is High)

Operation:
$\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+0002+$ Rel iff $\overline{\mathrm{INT}}=1$

## Description:

Test the state of the external interrupt pin and branch if and only if it is high. See BRA instruction for further details of the execution of the branch.

## Condition Codes:

Not affected.

## Comments:

In systems not using interrupts, this instruction and BIL can be used to create an extra I/O input bit. This instruction does NOT test the state of the interrupt mask bit nor does it indicate whether an interrupt is pending. All it does is indicate whether the INT line is high.

## Source Form(s): <br> BIH dd

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Relative | 3 | 2 | 2 F |

## BIL (Branch if Interrupt Line is Low)

Operation:
$\mathrm{PC}-\mathrm{PC}+0002+$ Rel iff $\overline{\mathrm{INT}}=0$

## Description:

Test the state of the external interrupt pin and branch if and only if it is low. See BRA instruction for further details of the execution of the branch.

## Condition Codes:

Not affected.

## Comments:

In systems not using interrupts, this instruction and BIH can be used to create an extra I/O input bit. This instruction does NOT test the state of the interrupt mask bit nor does it indicate whether an interrupt is pending. All it does is indicate whether the $\overline{\text { INT }}$ line is low.

## Source Form(s):

BIL dd

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Relative | 3 | 2 | 2 E |

## B1T (Bit Test Memory with Accumulator)

Operation:
ACCA . M
Description:
Perform the logical AND comparison of the contents of the Accumulator and the contents of Memory and modify the condition codes accordingly. The contents of the Accumulator and Memory are unchanged.
Condition Codes:
H, I, C: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result of the AND is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.
Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$

## Source Form(s):

BIT P

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Immediate | 2 | 2 | A5 |
| Direct | 3 | 2 | B5 |
| Extended | 4 | 3 | C5 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 3 | 1 | F5 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 4 | 2 | E5 |
| Indexed 2-Byte | 5 | 3 | D5 |

## BLO (Branch if Lower)

## Operation:

$$
\mathrm{PC}-\mathrm{PC}+0002+\text { Rel iff } \mathrm{C}=1
$$

## Description:

Following a compare, BLO will branch if and only if the register being compared is lower than the memory location. See BRA instruction for further details of the execution of the branch.

## Condition Codes:

Not affected.

## Comments:

Same opcode as BCS
Source Form(s):
BLO dd
Addressing Mode
Cycles Bytes Opcode
Relative
325

## BMC (Branch if Interrupt Mask is Clear)

## Operation:

$\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+0002+$ Rel iff $\mathrm{I}=0$

## Description:

Test the state of the Interrupt Mask bit and cause a branch if and only if I is clear. See BRA instruction for further details of the execution of the branch.

## Condition Codes:

Not affected.

## Comments:

This instruction does NOT branch on the condition of the external interrupt line. The test is performed only on the interrupt mask bit.
Source Form(s):
BMC dd

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Relative | 3 | 2 | 2 C |

## BLS (Branch if Lower or Same)

## Operation:

$\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+0002+$ Rel iff $(\mathrm{C} v \mathrm{Z})=1$
i.e., if $\mathrm{ACCA} \leq \mathrm{M}$ (unsigned binary numbers)

## Description:

Cause a branch if Carry/Borrow is set OR Zero Indicator is set. If the BLS instruction is executed immediately after execution of either of the instructions CMP or SUB, the branch will occur if and only if the unsigned binary number represented by the minuend (i.e., Accumulator) is less than or equal to the unsigned binary number represented by the subtrahend (i.e., Memory). See BRA instruction for further details of the execution of the branch.

## Condition Codes:

Not affected.
Source Form(s):
BLS dd

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Relative | 3 | 2 | 23 |

## BMI (Branch if Minus)

Operation:
$\mathrm{PC}-\mathrm{PC}+0002+$ Rel iff $\mathrm{N}=1$

## Description:

Test the state of the Negative Indicator bit and cause a branch if and only if $N$ is set. See BRA instruction for further details of the execution of the branch.
Condition Codes:
Not affected.
Source Form(s):
BMI dd

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Relative | 3 | 2 | $2 B$ |

## BMS (Branch if Interrupt Mask Bit is Set) <br> Operation: <br> $\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+0002+$ Rel iff $\mathrm{I}=1$ <br> Description: <br> Test the state of the Interrupt Mask bit and cause a branch if and only if I is set. See BRA instruction for further details of the execution of the branch. <br> Condition Codes: <br> Not affected. <br> Comments: <br> This instruction does NOT branch on the condition of the external interrupt line. The test is performed only on the interrupt mask bit.

## Source Form(s):

BMS dd

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Relative | 3 | 2 | 2 D |

## BPL (Branch if Plus)

Operation:
$\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+0002+$ Rel iff $\mathrm{N}=0$

## Description:

Test the state of the Negative Indicator bit and cause a branch if and only if N is clear. See BRA instruction for further details of the execution of the branch.
Condition Codes:
Not affected.
Source Form(s):
BPL dd

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Relative | 3 | 2 | 2 A |

## BNE (Branch if Not Equal)

Operation:
$\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+0002+\operatorname{Rel}$ iff $\mathrm{Z}=0$

## Description:

Test the state of the Zero Indicator bit and cause a branch if and only if Z is clear. Following a compare or subtract instruction BNE will cause a branch if the arguments were different. See BRA instruction for further details of the execution of the branch.
Condition Codes:
Not affected.
Source Form(s):
BNE dd

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Relative | 3 | 2 | 26 |

## BRA (Branch Always)

Operation:
$\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+0002+\mathrm{Rel}$

## Description:

Unconditional branch to the address given by the foregoing formula, in which Rel is the relative address stored as a two's complement number in the second byte of machine code corresponding to the branch instruction.
NOTE: The source program specifies the destination of any branch instruction by its absolute address, either as a numerical value or as a symbol or expression which can be evaluated by the assembler. The assembler obtains the relative address Rel from the absolute address and the current value of the program counter.

## Condition Codes:

Not affected.
Source Form(s):
BRA dd
Addressing Mode
Relative

| Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3 | 2 | 20 |

```
BRCLR \(\mathbf{n}_{\text {(Branch if }}\) Bit n
    is clear)
Operation:
    \(\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+0003+\) Rel iff bit n of M is zero
```


## Description:

```
Test bit \(n(n=0-7)\) of memory location \(M\) and branch if and only if the bit is clear.
```


## Condition Codes:

```
H, I, N, Z: Not affected.
C : Set if \(\mathrm{Mn}=1\); cleared otherwise.
Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
\(\mathrm{C}=\mathrm{Mn}\)
Comments:
The Carry/Borrow bit is set to the state of the bit tested. Used with an appropriate rotate instruction, this instruction is an easy way to do serial to parallel conversions.
```


## Source Form(s):

```
BRCLR n, DR, dd
\begin{tabular}{lccc|} 
Addressing Mode & Cycles & Bytes & Opcode \\
Relative & 5 & 3 & \(01+2 n\) \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
```


## BRN (Branch Never)

## Description:

Never branches. Branch never is a 2 byte, 3 cycle NOP.

## Condition Codes:

Not affected.

## Comments:

BRN is included here to demonstrate the nature of branches on the CDP6805 CMOS Family. Each branch is matched with an inverse that varies only in the least significant bit of the opcode. BRN is the inverse of BRA. This instruction may have some use during program debugging.

## Source Form(s):

 BRN dd| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Relative | 3 | 2 | 21 |

## BRSET $\mathbf{n}$ (Branch if Bit $\mathbf{n}$ is Set)

Operation:
$\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+0003+$ Rel iff bit n of M is not zero
Description:
Test bit $n(n=0-7)$ of memory location $M$ and branch if and only if the bit is set.

## Condition Codes:

H, I, N, Z: Not affected.
C: Set if $\mathrm{Mn}=1$; cleared otherwise.
Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes: $\mathrm{C}=\mathrm{Mn}$

## Comments:

The Carry/Borrow bit is set to the state of the bit tested. Used with an appropriate rotate instruction, this instruction is an easy way to do serial to parallel conversions.
Source Form(s):
BRSET n, DR, dd
Addressing Mode Cycles Bytes Opcode
Relative 53 2n

## BSET $\mathbf{n}$ (Set Bit in Memory)

## Operation:

$\mathrm{Mn} \leftarrow 1$
Description:
Set bit $\mathrm{n}(\mathrm{n}=0-7)$ in memory location $M$. All other bits in M are unaffected.

## Condition Codes:

Not affected.
Source Form(s):
BSET n, DR

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Direct | 5 | 2 | $10+2 \mathrm{n}$ |

## BSR (Branch to Subroutine)

Operation:
$\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+0002$
$\mathrm{SP}) \leftarrow \mathrm{PCL} ; \mathrm{SP} \leftarrow \mathrm{SP}-0001$
$(\mathrm{SP}) \leftarrow \mathrm{PCH} ; \mathrm{SP} \leftarrow \mathrm{SP}-0001$
$\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+\mathrm{Rel}$
Description:
The program counter is incremented by two. The least (low) significant byte of the program counter contents is pushed onto the stack. The stack pointer is then decremented by one. The most (high) significant byte of the program counter contents is then pushed onto the stack. Unused bits in the program counter high byte are stored as ones on the stack. The stack pointer is again decremented by one. A branch then occurs to the location specified by the relative offset. See the BRA instruction for details of the branch execution.

## Condition Codes:

Not affected.
Source Form(s): BSR dd

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Relative | 6 | 2 | AD |

## CLC (Clear Carry Bit)

## Operation:

C bit $\leftarrow 0$
Description:
Clear the Carry/Borrow bit in the processor condition code register.
Condition Codes:
H, I, N, Z: Not affected.
C: Cleared.
Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{C}=0$
Source Form(s):
CLC

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Inherent | 2 | 1 | 98 |

## CLI (Clear Interrupt Mask Bit)

## Operation:

I bit $\leftarrow 0$
Description:
Clear the Interrupt Mask bit in the processor condition code register. This enables the microprocessor to service interrupts. Interrupts that were pending while the I bit was set will now begin to have effect.
Condition Codes:
H, N, Z, C: Not affected.
I: Cleared.
Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{l}=0$
Source Form(s):
CLI
Addressing Mode Cycles Bytes Opcode
Inherent
$21 \quad 9 \mathrm{~A}$

## CLR (Clear)

Operation:
$\mathrm{X} \leftarrow 00$ or,
ACCA $\leftarrow 00$ or,
$\mathrm{M} \leftarrow 00$

## Description:

The contents of the Accumulator, Index Register, or Memory are replaced with zeroes.

## Condition Codes:

H, I, C: Not affected.
N : Cleared.
Z: Set.
Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{N}=0$
Z $=1$
Source Form(s):
CLR Q, CLRA, CLRX

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Accumulator | 3 | 1 | 4 F |
| Index Register | 3 | 1 | 5 F |
| Direct | 5 | 2 | 3 F |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 5 | 1 | 7 F |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 6 | 2 | 6 F |

## CMP <br> (Compare Accumulator with Memory)

## Operation:

ACCA - M

## Description:

Compare the contents of the Accumulator and the contents of Memory and set the condition codes, which may then be used for controlling the conditional branches. Both operands are unaffected.

## Condition Codes:

H, I: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result of the subtraction is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the result of the subtraction are cleared; cleared otherwise.
C: Set if the absolute value of the contents of memory is larger than the absolute value of the accumulator; cleared otherwise.
Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$
$\mathrm{C}=\overline{\mathrm{A} 7} \cdot \mathrm{M} 7 \mathrm{vM} 7 \cdot \mathrm{R} 7 \mathrm{vR} 7 \cdot \overline{\mathrm{~A} 7}$
Source Form(s):
CMP P

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Immediate | 2 | 2 | A1 |
| Direct | 3 | 2 | B1 |
| Extended | 4 | 3 | C1 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 3 | 1 | F1 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 4 | 2 | E1 |
| Indexed 2-Byte | 5 | 3 | D1 |

## COM (Complement)

Operation:
$\mathrm{X}-\sim \mathrm{X}=\$ \mathrm{FF}-\mathrm{X}$ or,
$\mathrm{ACCA} \leftarrow \sim \mathrm{ACCA}=\$ \mathrm{FF}-\mathrm{ACCA}$ or,
$\mathrm{M}-\sim \mathrm{M}=$ SFF -M

## Description:

Replace the contents of the Accumulator, Index Register, or Memory with the one's complement. Each bit of the operand is replaced with the complement of that bit.

## Condition Codes:

H, I: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result is set; cleared otherwise.

## COM (Complement) (Cont'd)

Z: Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.
C: Set.
Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7 \\
& \mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0} \\
& \mathrm{C}=1
\end{aligned}
$$

## Source Form(s):

COM Q, COMA, COMX

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Accumulator | 3 | 1 | 43 |
| Index Register | 3 | 1 | 53 |
| Direct | 5 | 2 | 33 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 5 | 1 | 73 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 6 | 2 | 63 |

## CPX (Compare Index Register with Memory)

Operation:
X - M

## Description:

Compare the contents of Index Register to the contents of Memory and set the condition codes, which may then be used for controlling the conditional branches. Both operands are unaffected.

## Condition Codes:

H, I: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result of the subtraction is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the result of the subtraction are cleared; cleared otherwise.
C: Set if the absolute value of the contents of memory is larger than the absolute value of the index register; cleared otherwise.
Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$
$\mathrm{C}=\overline{\mathrm{X} 7} \cdot \mathrm{M} 7 \mathrm{vM} 7 \cdot \mathrm{R} 7 \mathrm{vR} 7 \cdot \overline{\mathrm{X} 7}$
Source Form(s):
CPX P

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Immediate | 2 | 2 | A3 |
| Direct | 3 | 2 | B3 |
| Extended | 4 | 3 | C3 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 3 | 1 | F3 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 4 | 2 | E3 |
| Indexed 2-Byte | 5 | 3 | D3 |

## DEC (Decrement)

## Operation:

$\mathrm{X} \leftarrow \mathrm{X}-01$ or,
ACCA - ACCA - 01 or,
$\mathrm{M} \leftarrow \mathrm{M}-01$
Description:
Subtract one from the contents of the Accumulator, Index Register, or Memory. The Negative Indicator and Zero Indicator bits are set or reset according to the result of this operation. The Carry/Borrow bit is not affected by this operation.

Condition Codes:
H, I, C: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.

Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$
Source Form(s):
DEC Q, DECA, DECX (DEX is recognized by the Assembler as DECX)

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Accumulator | 3 | 1 | 4 A |
| Index Register | 3 | 1 | 5 A |
| Direct | 5 | 2 | 3 A |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 5 | 1 | 7 A |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 6 | 2 | 6 A |

## EOR (Exclusive OR Memory with Accumulator)

Operation:
$\mathrm{ACCA} \leftarrow \mathrm{ACCA}+\mathrm{M}$

## Description:

Perform the logical EXCLUSIVE OR between the contents of the Accumulator and the contents of Memory, and place the result in the Accumulator. Each bit of the Accumulator after the operation will be the logical EXCLUSIVE OR of the corresponding bit of Memory and the Accumulator before the operation.

## Condition Codes:

H, I, C: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result is set; cleared otherwise.

EOR (Exclusive OR Memory with Accumulator) (Cont'd)
Z: Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.

Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$
Source Form(s):
EOR P

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Immediate | 2 | 2 | A8 |
| Direct | 3 | 2 | B8 |
| Extended | 4 | 3 | C8 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 3 | 1 | F8 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 4 | 2 | E8 |
| Indexed 2-Byte | 5 | 3 | D8 |

## INC (Increment)

Operation:
$\mathrm{X} \leftarrow \mathrm{X}+01$ or,
$\mathrm{ACCA} \leftarrow \mathrm{ACCA}+01$ or,
$M \leftarrow M+01$

## Description:

Add one to the contents of the Accumulator, Index Register or Memory. The Negative Indicator and Zero Indicator bits are set or reset according to the result of this operation. The Carry/Borrow bit is not affected by this operation.

## Condition Codes:

H, I, C: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result is set; cleared otherwise.
Z : Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.
Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7 \\
& \mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Source Form(s):

INC Q, INCA, INCX (INX is recognized by the Assembler as INCX)

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Accumulator | 3 | 1 | 4 C |
| Index Register | 3 | 1 | 5 C |
| Direct | 5 | 2 | 3 C |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 5 | 1 | 7 C |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 6 | 2 | 6 C |

## JMP (Jump)

Operation:
$\mathrm{PC} \leftharpoondown$ effective address

## Description:

A jump occurs to the instruction stored at the effective address. The effective address is obtained according to the rules for EXTended, DIRect or INDexed addressing.

## Condition Codes:

Not affected.

## Source Form(s):

JMP P

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Direct | 2 | 2 | BC |
| Extended | 3 | 3 | CC |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 2 | 1 | FC |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 3 | 2 | EC |
| Indexed 2-Byte | 4 | 3 | DC |

## JSR (Jump to Subroutine)

Operation:
$\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}+\mathrm{N}$
$(\mathrm{SP}) \leftarrow \mathrm{PCL} ; \mathrm{SP} \leftarrow \mathrm{SP}-0001$
$(\mathrm{SP}) \leftarrow \mathrm{PCH} ; \mathrm{SP} \leftarrow \mathrm{SP}-0001$
$\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow$ effective address

## Description:

The program counter is incremented by $\mathrm{N}(\mathrm{N}=1$, 2 , or 3 depending on the addressing mode), and is then pushed onto the stack (least significant byte first). Unused bits in the program counter high byte are stored as ones on the stack. The stack pointer points to the next empty location on the stack. A jump occurs to the instruction stored at the effective address. The effective address is obtained according to the rules for EXTended, DIRect, or INDexed addressing.

## Condition Codes:

Not affected.
Source Form(s): JSR P

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Direct | 5 | 2 | BD |
| Extended | 6 | 3 | CD |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 5 | 1 | FD |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 6 | 2 | ED |
| Indexed 2-Byte | 7 | 3 | DD |

## LDA Load Accumulator from Memory)

## Operation:

$\mathrm{ACCA}-\mathrm{M}$

## Description:

Load the contents of Memory into the Accumulator. The condition codes are set according to the data.

## Condition Codes:

H, I, C: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the accumulator is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the accumulator are cleared; cleared otherwise.
Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$

## Source Form(s):

LDA P

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Immediate | 2 | 2 | A6 |
| Direct | 3 | 2 | B6 |
| Extended | 4 | 3 | C6 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 3 | 1 | F6 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 4 | 2 | E6 |
| Indexed 2-Byte | 5 | 3 | D6 |


| LDX (Load Index Register from Memory) |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Operation:$X \leftarrow M$ |  |  |  |
| Description: |  |  |  |
| Load the contents of Memory into the Index Register. The condition codes are set according to the data. |  |  |  |
| Condition Codes: |  |  |  |
| H, I, C: Not affected. |  |  |  |
| N : Set if the most significant bit of the index register is set; cleared otherwise. |  |  |  |
| Z: Set if all bits of the index register are cleared cleared otherwise. |  |  |  |
| Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:$\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7 \\ & \mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0} \end{aligned}$ |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Source Form(s): } \\ & \text { LDX P } \end{aligned}$ |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| Immediate | 2 | 2 | AE |
| Direct | 3 | 2 | BE |
| Extended | 4 | 3 | CE |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 3 | 1 | FE |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 4 | 2 | EE |
| Indexed 2-Byte | 5 | 3 | DE |

## LSL (Logical Shift Left)

Operation:


## Description:

Shift all bits of the Accumulator, Index Register, or Memory one place to the left. Bit 0 is loaded with a zero. The Carry/Borrow bit is loaded from the most significant bit of the Accumulator, Index Register, or Memory.

## Condition Codes:

H, I: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.
C: Set if, before the operation, the most significant bit of ACCA, X or M is set; cleared otherwise.

## LSL (Logical Shift Left) (Cont'd)

Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$
$\mathrm{C}=\mathrm{b} 7$ (before operation)
Comments:
Same as ASL
Source Form(s):
LSL Q, LSLA, LSLX

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Accumulator | 3 | 1 | 48 |
| Index Register | 3 | 1 | 58 |
| Direct | 5 | 2 | 38 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 5 | 1 | 78 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 6 | 2 | 68 |

## LSR (Logical Shitt Right)

Operation:


Description:
Shift all bits of the Accumulator, Index Register, or Memory one place to the right. Bit 7 is loaded with a zero. Bit 0 is loaded into the Carry/Borrow bit.

Condition Codes:
H, I: Not affected.
N : Cleared.
Z: Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.
C: Set if, before the operation, the least significant bit of ACCA, X or M is set; cleared otherwise.

## Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:

$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 0$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$
$\mathrm{C}=\mathrm{b} 0$ (before operation)
Source Form(s):
LSR Q, LSRA, LSRX

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Accumulator | 3 | 1 | 44 |
| Index Register | 3 | 1 | 54 |
| Direct | 5 | 2 | 34 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 5 | 1 | 74 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 6 | 2 | 64 |

## MUL (Multiply)

## Operation:

$\mathrm{XA} \leftarrow \mathrm{X}^{*} \mathrm{~A}$

## Description:

Multiply the eight bits in the Index Register by the eight bits in the Accumulator to obtain a 16-bit unsigned number. The most significant bits of the product are stored in the Index Register, while the least significant bits are stored in the Accumulator.

## Condition Codes:

I, N, Z: Not affected.
H, C: Cleared.

## Comments:

This instruction is available only on the CDP68HC05C4 and CDP68HC05D2 Microcomputers.

Source Form(s):
MUL

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Inherent | 11 | 1 | 42 |

## NEG (Negate)

## Operation:

```
\(\mathrm{X} \leftarrow-\mathrm{X}\) or,
ACCA - -ACCA or,
\(\mathrm{M} \leftarrow-\mathrm{M}\)
```


## Description:

Replace the contents of the Accumulator, Index Register, or Memory with its two's complement. Note that the data $\$ 80$ and 00 are left unchanged by two's complement.

## Condition Codes:

H, I: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.
C: Set if there would be a borrow in the implied subtraction from zero; the C bit will be set in all cases except when the contents of ACCA, X or M before the NEG are 00 .

## Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:

$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$
$C=R 7 v R 6 v R 5 v R 4 \nu R 3 v R 2 v R 1 \nu R 0$

## Source Form(s):

NEG Q, NEGA, NEGX

| NE (Negate) | (Cont'd) |  |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| Accumulator | 3 | 1 | 40 |
| Index Register | 3 | 1 | 50 |
| Direct | 5 | 2 | 30 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 5 | 1 | 70 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 6 | 2 | 60 |

## NOP (No Operation)

## Description:

This is a single-byte instruction which causes only the program counter to be incremented. No other registers are changed.

Condition Codes:
Not affected.
Source Form(s):
NOP
Addressing Mode Cycles Bytes Opcode
Inherent
21
9D

## ORA (Inclusive OR)

Operation:
ACCA $\leftarrow$ ACCA v M

## Description:

Perform logical OR between the contents of the Accumulator and the contents of Memory and place the result in the Accumulator. Each bit of the Accumulator after the operation will be the logical (inclusive) OR result of the corresponding bits of Memory and the Accumulator before the operation.

## Condition Codes:

H, I, C: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.

Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$
Source Form(s):
ORA P

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Immediate | 2 | 2 | AA |
| Direct | 3 | 2 | BA |
| Extended | 4 | 3 | CA |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 3 | 1 | FA |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 4 | 2 | EA |
| Indexed 2-Byte | 5 | 3 | DA |

## ROL (Rotate Left thru Carry)

Operation:


Description:
Shift all bits of the Accumulator, Index Register, or Memory one place to the left. Bit 0 is loaded from the Carry/Borrow bit. The Carry/Borrow bit is loaded from the most significant bit of the Accumulator, Index Register, or Memory.
Condition Codes:
H, I: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.
C: Set if, before the operation, the most significant bit of ACCA, X or M is set; cleared otherwise.
Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7 \\
& \mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0} \\
& \mathrm{C}=\mathrm{b} 7 \text { (before operation) }
\end{aligned}
$$

Source Form(s):
ROL Q, ROLA, ROLX

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Accumulator | 3 | 1 | 49 |
| Index Register | 3 | 1 | 59 |
| Direct | 5 | 2 | 39 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 5 | 1 | 79 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 6 | 2 | 69 |

## ROR (Rotate Right Thru Carry)

Operation:


Description:
Shift all bits of the Accumulator, Index Register, or Memory one place to the right. Bit 7 is loaded from the Carry/ Borrow bit. Bit 0 is loaded into the Carry/Borrow bit.

## Condition Codes:

H, I: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.
C: Set if, before the operation, the least significant bit of ACCA, X or M is set; cleared otherwise.

| ROR (Ro | Thru | arry) | Cont'd) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Boolean Formula | dition | odes: |  |
| $\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$ |  |  |  |
| $\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R7}} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5}$ | 2. $\overline{\mathrm{R} 1}$. |  |  |
| $\mathrm{C}=\mathrm{b} 0$ (before |  |  |  |
| Source Form(s): |  |  |  |
| ROR Q, RORA |  |  |  |
| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| Accumulator | 3 | 1 | 46 |
| Index Register | 3 | 1 | 56 |
| Direct | 5 | 2 | 36 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 5 | 1 | 76 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 6 | 2 | 66 |

## RSP (Reset Stack Pointer)

Operation:

$$
\mathrm{SP} \leftarrow \$ 7 \mathrm{~F}
$$

Description:
Reset the stack pointer to the top of the stack.
Condition Codes:
Not affected.
Source Form(s):
RSP

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Inherent | 2 | 1 | 9 C |

## RTI (Return from Interrupt)

Operation:
$\mathrm{SP}-\mathrm{SP}+0001 ; \mathrm{CC}-(\mathrm{SP})$
$S P-S P+0001 ; A C C A-(S P)$
$\mathrm{SP}-\mathrm{SP}+0001 ; \mathrm{X}-(\mathrm{SP})$
$\mathrm{SP}-\mathrm{SP}+0001 ; \mathrm{PCH}-(\mathrm{SP})$
$\mathrm{SP} \leftarrow \mathrm{SP}+0001 ; \mathrm{PCL} \leftarrow(\mathrm{SP})$

## Description:

The condition codes, accumulator, index register, and the program counter are restored according to the state previously saved on the stack. Note that the interrupt mask bit (I bit) will be reset if and only if the corresponding bit stored on the stack is zero.

## Condition Codes:

Set or cleared according to the first byte pulled from the stack.
Source Form(s):
RTI

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Inherent | 9 | 1 | 80 |

## RTS (Return from Subroutine) <br> Operation: <br> $$
\begin{aligned} & S P \leftarrow S P+0001 ; P C H \leftarrow(S P) \\ & S P \leftarrow S P+0001 ; P C L \leftarrow(S P) \end{aligned}
$$ <br> Description: <br> The stack pointer is incremented by one. The contents of the byte of memory, pointed to by the stack pointer, are loaded into the high byte of the program counter. The stack pointer is again incremented by one. The byte pointed to by the stack pointer is loaded into the low byte of the program counter. <br> Condition Codes: <br> Not affected. <br> Source Form(s): <br> RTS <br> | Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Inherent | 6 | 1 | 81 |

## SBC (Subtract with Carry)

Operation:
ACCA - ACCA - M - C

## Description:

Subtract the contents of Memory and the Carry/ Borrow bit from the contents of the Accumulator, and place the result in the Accumulator.

## Condition Codes:

H, I: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result is set; cleared otherwise.
Z : Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.
C: Set if the absolute value of the contents of memory plus the previous carry is larger than the absolute value of the accumulator; cleared otherwise.

## Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:

$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$
$\mathrm{C}=\overline{\mathrm{A} 7} \cdot \mathrm{M} 7 \mathrm{vM} 7 \cdot \mathrm{R} 7 \mathrm{vR} 7 \cdot \overline{\mathrm{~A} 7}$

## Source Form(s):

SBC P

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Immediate | 2 | 2 | A2 |
| Direct | 3 | 2 | B2 |
| Extended | 4 | 3 | C2 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 3 | 1 | F2 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 4 | 2 | E2 |
| Indexed 2-Byte | 5 | 3 | D2 |

## SEC (Set Carry Bit)

Operation:
C bit $\leftarrow 1$

## Description:

Set the carry bit in the processor condition code register.
Condition Codes:
H, I, N, Z: Not affected.
C: Set.
Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{C}=1$
Source Form(s):
SEC

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Inherent | 2 | 1 | 99 |

## SEI (Set Interrupt Mask Bit)

Operation:
I bit $\leftarrow 1$

## Description:

Set the interrupt. mask bit in the processor condition code register. The microprocessor is inhibited from servicing interrupts, and will continue with execution of the instructions of the program until the interrupt mask bit is cleared.

## Condition Codes:

H, N, Z, C: Not affected.
I: Set.
Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{I}=\mathrm{I}$
Source Form(s):
SEI

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Inherent | 2 | 1 | 9 B |


| STA |
| :--- | :--- |
| (Store Accumulator |
| in Memory) |

## STOP (Enable $\overline{\mathrm{RQ}}$, Stop Oscillator)

## Description:

Reduce power consumption by eliminating all dynamic power dissipation, resulting in: (1) external interrupt request enabling, (2) inhibiting of oscillator, and, in the CDP6805E2/E3/F2/G2, (3) timer prescaler to clear, (4) disabling of timer interrupts, and (5) timer interrupt flag bit to clear. When $\overline{\text { RESET }}$ or IRQ input goes low: (1) oscillator is enabled, (2) a delay of some number of instruction cycles allows oscillator to stabilize, (3) the interrupt request vector is fetched, and (4) service routine is executed.
External interrupts are enabled following the RTI command.
Condition Codes:
H, N, Z, C: Not affected.
I: Cleared.
Source Form(s):
STOP
Addressing Mode Cycles Bytes Opcode Inherent 2
$2 \quad 1 \quad 8 \mathrm{E}$

## STX (Store Index Register in Memory)

Operation:
$\mathrm{M} \leftarrow \mathrm{X}$
Description:
Store the contents of the Index Register in Memory. The contents of the Index Register remain the same.

## Condition Codes:

H, I, C: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the index register is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the index register are clear; cleared otherwise.
Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{X} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{X} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{X} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{X} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{X} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{X} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{X} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{X} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{X} 0}$
Source Form(s):
STX $P$

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Direct | 4 | 2 | BF |
| Extended | 5 | 3 | CF |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 4 | 1 | FF |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 5 | 2 | EF |
| Indexed 2-Byte | 6 | 3 | DF |

## SUB (Subtract)

## Operation:

ACCA $\leftarrow$ ACCA - M

## Description:

Subtract the contents of Memory from the contents of the Accumulator and place the result in the Accumulator.

## Condition Codes:

H, I: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the result is set; cleared otherwise.
Z: Set if all bits of the result are cleared; cleared otherwise.
C: Set if the absolute value of the contents of memory are larger than the absolute value of the accumulator; cleared otherwise.

## Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:

$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{R} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{R} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{R} 0}$
$\mathrm{C}=\overline{\mathrm{A} 7} \cdot \mathrm{M} 7 \mathrm{vR} 7 \cdot \mathrm{R} 7 \mathrm{vR} 7 \cdot \overline{\mathrm{~A} 7}$
Source Form(s):
SUB P

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Immediate | 2 | 2 | A0 |
| Direct | 3 | 2 | B0 |
| Extended | 4 | 3 | C0 |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 3 | 1 | F0 |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 4 | 2 | E0 |
| Indexed 2-Byte | 5 | 3 | D0 |

## SWI (Software Interrupt)

Description:
The program counter is incremented by one. The program counter, index register and accumulator are pushed onto the stack. The condition code register bits are then pushed onto the stack with bits $\mathrm{H}, \mathrm{I}, \mathrm{N}, \mathrm{Z}$, and C going into bit positions 4 through 0 with the top three bits (7, 6 and 5) containing ones. The stack pointer is decremented by one after each byte is stored on the stack.
The interrupt mask bit is then set. The program counter is then loaded with the address stored in the software interrupt vector located at memory locations $n-0002$ and $n-0003$, where $n$ is the address corresponding to a high state on all lines of the address bus.

## Condition Codes:

H, N, Z, C: Not affected.
I: Set.

## Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:

 $\mathrm{I}=\mathrm{I}$
## Caution:

This instruction is used by Motorola in some of its software products and may be unavailable for general use.

Source Form(s):
SWI

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Inherent | 10 | 1 | 83 |

## SWI (Software Interrupt)

Operation:
$\mathrm{PC}-\mathrm{PC}+0001$
$(\mathrm{SP}) \leftarrow \mathrm{PCL} ; \mathrm{SP} \leftarrow \mathrm{SP}-0001$
$(\mathrm{SP}) \leftarrow \mathrm{PCH} ; \mathrm{SP} \leftarrow \mathrm{SP}-0001$
(SP) -X ; SP $\leftarrow \mathrm{SP}-0001$
$(S P) \leftarrow A C C A ; S P \leftarrow S P-0001$
$(\mathrm{SP}) \leftarrow \mathrm{CC} ; \mathrm{SP} \leftarrow \mathrm{SP}-0001$
I bit $\leftarrow 1$
$\mathrm{PCH} \leftarrow \mathrm{n}-0003$
$\mathrm{PCL} \leftarrow \mathrm{n}-0002$

## TAX (Transter Accumulator to Index Register)

## Operation:

$X \leftarrow A C C A$

## Description:

Load the Index Register with the contents of the Accumulator. The contents of the Accumulator are unchanged.
Condition Codes:
Not affected.
Source Form(s): TAX

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Inherent | 2 | 1 | 97 |

## TST (Test for Negative or Zero)

Operation:
X - 00 or,
ACCA - 00 or, M-0

Description:
Set the Negative Indicator and Zero Indicator condition code bits according to the contents of the Accumulator, Index Register, or Memory.

## Condition Codes:

H, I, C: Not affected.
N : Set if the most significant bit of the contents of ACCA, X, or M is set; cleared otherwise.
Z : Set if all bits of ACCA, X , or M are clear; cleared otherwise.

Boolean Formula(e) for Condition Codes:
$\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{M} 7$
$\mathrm{Z}=\overline{\mathrm{M} 7} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{M} 6} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{M} 5} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{M} 4} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{M} 3} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{M} 2} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{M} 1} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{M} 0}$
Source Form(s):
TST Q, TSTA, TSTX

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Accumulator | 3 | 1 | 4 D |
| Index Register | 3 | 1 | 5 D |
| Direct | 4 | 2 | 3D |
| Indexed 0 Offset | 4 | 1 | 7 D |
| Indexed 1-Byte | 5 | 2 | 6D |


| (Transfer Index Register |
| :--- |
| to Accumulator) |
| Operation: |
| ACCA -X |
| Description: |
| Load the Accumulator with the contents of the |
| Index Register. The contents of the Index Register |
| are unchanged. |
| Condition Codes: |
| Not affected. |
| Source Form(s): <br> TXA <br> Addressing Mode <br> Inherent |

## WAIT (Enable Interrupt, Stop Processor)

## Description:

Reduce power consumption by eliminating dynamic power dissipation in all circuits except the timer, serial peripheral interface, and serial communications interface. Enable external interrupts and stop clocking of processor circuits.
Timer interrupts may be enabled or disabled by programmer prior to execution of WAIT.
When $\overline{\mathrm{RESET}}$ or $\overline{\mathrm{IRQ}}$ inputs go low, or timer counter reaches zero with counter interrupt enabled: (1) processor clocks are enabled, and (2) interrupt request, reset, and timer interrupt vectors are fetched.

Interrupts are enabled following the RTI command.

## Condition Codes:

H, N, Z, C: Not affected.
I: Cleared.
Source Form(s):
WAIT

| Addressing Mode | Cycles | Bytes | Opcode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Inherent | 2 | 1 | 8 F |

# Appendix A CDP6805 CMOS Family Compatibility with MC6800 

## Introduction

Strictly speaking, the CDP6805 CMOS Family is neither source-nor-object code compatible with the MC6800; but it is very similar to all 6800 Family processors. An experienced MC6800 programmer should have little difficulty adapting to the CDP6805 CMOS Family instruction set. The following paragraphs enumerate the differences between the MC6800 and the CDP6805 CMOS families.

## Removed B-Register

In order to free valuable opcode space, the B-register is removed in the CDP6805 CMOS Family. Therefore, none of the register/memory or read/ modify/write instructions have a B-register form. Several other instructions are also not available in the CDP6805 CMOS Family, including:

SBA, CBA, TAB, TBA, ABA, PSHB, and PULB

## Removed V-Flag

The V-flag bit and the logic to set it are removed in the CDP6805 CMOS Family. This was done because usage of the small controller does not generally require signed arithmetic operations. However, unsigned arithmetic operations are still available. Without the V-flag bit, the following MC6800 instructions are not available in the CDP6805 CMOS Family:
SEV, CLV, BVC, BVS, BGE, BLT, BGT, and BLE
In the CDP6805 CMOS Family, unsigned inequalities are still available using BHS (BCC) and BLO (BCS).

## Reduced Stack Control

Instructions relating to the manipulation of the SP are greatly reduced in the CDP6805 CMOS Family.

On reset, or upon execution of the RSP instruction, the SP is initialized to $\$ 7 \mathrm{~F}$ for the CDP6805E2/E3/ F2/G2 and \$FF for the CDP68HC05C4/D2. Other instructions that were deleted include:

LDS, STS, INS, DES, PSHA, PULA, TXS, TSX, AND WAI

Do not confuse the WAIT instruction used with the CDP6805 CMOS Family with the WAI instruction used by the MC6800.

## Removed DAA

The DAA has been deleted in the CDP6805 CMOS Family members: The H-bit, however, is retained and two additional branches are added to branch if the H -bit is set or cleared ( $\mathrm{BHCS}, \mathrm{BHCC}$ ). These branches can be used to write software subroutines accomplishing DAA. (Remember, ROM is much cheaper than the DAA.)

## Changed Register Lengths

The X-register is reduced to eight bits, the SP to eight bits or less, and the PC to 16 bits or less in the CDP6805 CMOS Family. The change in the X-register size from 16 to eight bits required changes in the addressing modes; these are described in the Addressing Modes paragraph of the section on Software Description. Also, because the X -and A-registers are equivalent in size, two new instructions are added to transfer $X$ to $A$ and $A$ to $X$ (TXA, TAX).

## Bit Manipulation

Bit-manipulation instructions have been added to the CDP6805 CMOS Family because they are extremely useful for low-end applications. Two classes of bit-manipulation instructions have been added: bit set/clear and test-and-branch on bit set/clear.

## (a) Bit Set/Clear

These instructions allow any bit in page zero, including bits in the I/O ports (but not always the data direction registers), to be set or cleared with one 2-byte instruction. Page zero includes the first 256 addressable memory locations from $\$ 00$ through $\$ F F$.
(b) Test-and-Branch on Bit Set/Clear

These instructions test any bit in page zero (including I/O, RAM, and ROM) and will cause a branch, if the bit is set or cleared. In addition, the C-bit of the condition code register contains the state of the bit tested.

## New Branches

Several new branches are added to facilitate lowend type programs in the CDP6805 CMOS Family. The BHCS and BHCC are useful in BCD additions. A branch, if the interupt mask bit is set or cleared (BMS/BMC), is also added. This eliminates the need for TAP and TPA because each bit in the condition code register can be tested by a branch. Two more branches are added that branch on the logic condition of the interrupt line (high or low): BIH/BIL. These allow the interrupt line to be used as an additional input in systems not using interrupts.

## New Addressing Modes

The addressing modes of the MC6800 were optimized for the CDP6805 CMOS Family. For more details see the Addressing Modes paragraph in the section on Software Description of this manual.

## Read/Modify/Write the X Register

By utilizing the column in the opcode map vacated by the B-register for read/modify/write, and because the X-register is now eight bits, all of these operations are available to the X-register. For example:

> ROLX, INCX, CLRX, NEGX, etc.

This eliminated the traditional INX, DEX. However, mnemonics INX and DEX are still recognized by the assembler for compatibility.

## Convenience Mnemonics

These are not new CDP6805 CMOS Family instructions, but only represent improvements to the M6805 HMOS/M146805 CMOS assembler that allow existing instructions to be recognized by more than one mnemonic.
(a) LSL (Logical Shift Left)

Because logical and arithmetic left shifts are identical, LSL is equivalent to ASL.
(b) BHS (Branch Higher or Same)

After a compare or subtract, the carry is cleared if the register argument was higher or equal to the memory argument; hence, the BHS is equivalent to BCC.
(c) BLO (Branch if Lower)

After a compare or subtract, the carry is set if the register argument was lower than the memory argument; hence, the BLO is equivalent to BCS.

## Appendix B Instruction Set Alphabetical Listing

Table VI provides an alphabetical listing of the mnemonic instruction set, together with addressing modes used and the effects on the condition code register.

TABLE VI

|  | Addressing Modes |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Condition Codes |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Mnemonic | Inherent | Immediate | Direct | Extended | Relative | Indexed (No Offset) | Indexed (8 Bits) | Indexed (16 Bits) | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Bit } \\ & \text { Set/ } \\ & \text { Clear } \end{aligned}$ | Bit <br> Test \& Branch | H | 1 | N | Z | C |
| ADC |  | X | X | X |  | X | X | X |  |  | $\wedge$ | - | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ |
| ADD |  | X | X | X |  | X | X | X |  |  | $\wedge$ | - | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ |
| AND |  | X | X | X |  | X | X | X |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\bullet$ |
| ASL | X |  | X |  |  | X | X |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | - | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ |
| ASR | X |  | X |  |  | X | X |  |  |  | - | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ |
| BCC |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BCLR |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | X |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BCS |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BEQ |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BHCC |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BHCS |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BHI |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BHS |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BIH |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BIL |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BIT |  | X | X | X |  | X | X | X |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\bullet$ |
| BLO |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BLS |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BMC |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BMI |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BMS |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BNE |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BPL |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BRA |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BRN |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BRCLR |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | X | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ |
| BRSET |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | X | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | $\wedge$ |
| BSET |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | X |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| BSR |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| CLC | X |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | 0 |
| CLI | X |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | 0 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| CLR | X |  | X |  |  | X | X |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | 0 | 1 | $\bullet$ |
| CMP |  | X | X | X |  | X | X | X |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ |
| COM | X |  | X |  |  | X | X |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | - | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | 1 |
| CPX |  | X | X | X |  | X | X | X |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ |

TABLE VI (Cont'd)

|  | Addressing Modes |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Condition Codes |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Mnemonic | Inherent | Immediate | Direct | Extended | Relative | Indexed (No Offset) | Indexed (8 Bits) | Indexed (16 Bits) | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Bit } \\ & \text { Set// } \\ & \text { Clear } \end{aligned}$ | Bit <br> Test \& Branch | H | 1 | N | Z | C |
| DEC | X |  | X |  |  | X | X |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\bullet$ |
| EOR |  | X | X | X |  | X | X | X |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\bullet$ |
| INC | X |  | X |  |  | X | X |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\bullet$ |
| JMP |  |  | X | X |  | X | X | X |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| JSR |  |  | X | X |  | X | X | X |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| LDA |  | X | X | X |  | X | X | X |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\bullet$ |
| LDX |  | X | X | X |  | X | X | X |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\bullet$ |
| LSL | X |  | X |  |  | X | X |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ |
| LSR | X |  | X |  |  | X | X |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | 0 | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ |
| MUL* | X |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | 0 |
| NEG | X |  | X |  |  | X | X |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ |
| NOP | X |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| ORA |  | X | X | X |  | X | X | X |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\bullet$ |
| ROL | X |  | X |  |  | X | X |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ |
| ROR | X |  | X |  |  | X | X |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ |
| RSP | X |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| RTI | X |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | ? | ? | ? | ? | ? |
| RTS | X |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| SBC |  | X | X | X |  | X | X | X |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ |
| SEC | X |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | 1 |
| SEI | X |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | 1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| STA |  |  | X | X |  | X | X | X |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\bullet$ |
| STOP | X |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | 1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| STX |  |  | X | X |  | X | X | X |  |  | $\bullet$ | - | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\bullet$ |
| SUB |  | X | X | X |  | X | X | X |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ |
| SWI | X |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | 1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| TAX | X |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| TST | X |  | X |  |  | X | X |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\wedge$ | $\wedge$ | $\bullet$ |
| TXA | X |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |
| WAIT | X |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | 1 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |

Condition Code Symbols

| H | Half Carry (From Bit 3) | $\wedge$ Test and Set if True; Cleared Otherwise |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Interrupt Mask | - Not Affected |
| N | Negative (Sign Bit) | ? Load CC Register From Stack |
| Z | Zero | 0 Cleared |
| C | Carry/Borrow | 1 Set |

*Note that the MUL instruction is available only on the CDP68HC05C4 and CDP68HC05D2 Microcomputers.

# Appendix C <br> Instruction Set Functional Listing 

This instruction set contains a list of functions which are categorized as to the type of instruction. It provides five different categories of instructions and provides the following information for each function: (1) corresponding mnemonic, (2) addressing mode, (3) opcode, (4) number of bytes, and (5) number of cycles.

Table VII - Branch Instructions

|  |  | Relative Addressing Mode |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Function | Mnemonic | Op <br> Code | \# Bytes | \# Cycles |
| Branch Always | BRA | 20 | 2 | 3 |
| Branch Never | BRN | 21 | 2 | 3 |
| Branch IFF Higher | BHI | 22 | 2 | 3 |
| Branch IFF Lower or Same | BLS | 23 | 2 | 3 |
| Branch IFF Carry Clear | BCC | 24 | 2 | 3 |
| (Branch IFF Higher or Same) | (BHS) | 24 | 2 | 3 |
| Branch IFF Carry Set | BCS | 25 | 2 | 3 |
| (Branch IFF Lower) | (BLO) | 25 | 2 | 3 |
| Branch IFF Not Equal | BNE | 26 | 2 | 3 |
| Branch IFF Equal | BEQ | 27 | 2 | 3 |
| Branch IFF Half Carry Clear | BHCC | 28 | 2 | 3 |
| Branch IFF Half Carry Set | BHCS | 29 | 2 | 3 |
| Branch IFF Plus | BPL | 2A | 2 | 3 |
| Branch IFF Minus | BMI | 2B | 2 | 3 |
| Branch IFF Interrupt Mask Bit is Clear | BMC | 2 C | 2 | 3 |
| Branch IFF Interrupt Mask Bit is Set | BMS | 2D | 2 | 3 |
| Branch IFF Interrupt Line is Low | BIL | 2E | 2 | 3 |
| Branch IFF Interrupt Line is High | BIH | 2 F | 2 | 3 |
| Branch to Subroutine | BSR | AD | 2 | 6 |

Table VIII - Bit Manipulation Instructions

| Function | Mnemonic | Addressing Modes |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Bit Set/Clear |  |  | Bit Test and Branch |  |  |
|  |  | Op <br> Code |  | Cycles | Op Code | $\begin{gathered} \# \\ \text { Bytes } \end{gathered}$ | \# Cycles |
| Branch IFF Bit n is Set | BRSET $n(n=0 \ldots 7)$ | - | - | - | $2 \cdot n$ | 3 | 5 |
| Branch IFF Bit n is Clear | BRCLR $n(n=0 \ldots 7)$ | - | - | - | $01+2 \cdot n$ | 3 | 5 |
| Set Bit $n$ | BSET $n(n=0 \ldots 7)$ | $10+2 \cdot n$ | 2 | 5 | - | - | - |
| Clear Bit n | $B C L R n(n=0 \ldots 7)$ | $11+2 \cdot n$ | 2 | 5 | - | - | - |

Table IX - Control Instructions

|  |  | Inherent |  |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Function | Mnemonic | Op <br> Code | $\#$ <br> Bytes | $\#$ <br> Cycles |
| Transter A to X | TAX | 97 | 1 | 2 |
| Transfer X to A | TXA | $9 F$ | 1 | 2 |
| Set Carry Bit | SEC | 99 | 1 | 2 |
| Clear Carry Bit | CLC | 98 | 1 | 2 |
| Set Interrupt Mask Bit | SEI | 98 | 1 | 2 |
| Clear Interrupt Mask Bit | CLI | $9 A$ | 1 | 2 |
| Software Interrupt | SWI | 83 | 1 | 10 |
| Return from Subroutine | RTS | 81 | 1 | 6 |
| Return from Interrupt | RTI | 80 | 1 | 9 |
| Reset Stack Pointer | RSP | $9 C$ | 1 | 2 |
| No-Operation | NOP | $9 D$ | 1 | 2 |
| Stop | STOP | $8 E$ | 1 | 2 |
| Wait | WAIT | $8 F$ | 1 | 2 |

Table X - Read/Modify/Write Instructions

|  |  | Addressing Modes |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Inherent (A) |  |  | Inherent ( X ) |  |  | Direct |  |  | Indexed (No Offset) |  |  | Indexed (8-Bit Offset) |  |  |
| Function | Mnemonic | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Op } \\ & \text { Code } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \# \\ \text { Bytes } \end{gathered}$ | Cycles | $0 p$ Code | $\begin{gathered} \# \\ \text { Bytes } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \# \\ \text { Cycles } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Op } \\ & \text { Code } \end{aligned}$ | Bytes | $\begin{gathered} \\ \text { Cycles } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Op } \\ & \text { Code } \end{aligned}$ | Bytes | $\begin{gathered} \\ \text { Cycles } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Op } \\ & \text { Code } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \\ \text { Bytes } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \\ \text { Cycles } \end{gathered}$ |
| Increment | INC | 4C | 1 | 3 | 5C | 1 | 3 | 3C | 2 | 5 | 7C | 1 | 5 | 6C | 2 | 6 |
| Decrement | DEC | 4A | 1 | 3 | 5A | 1 | 3 | 3A | 2 | 5 | 7 A | 1 | 5 | 6 A | 2 | 6 |
| Clear | CLR | 4F | 1 | 3 | 5 F | 1 | 3 | 3 F | 2 | 5 | 7 F | 1 | 5 | 6 F | 2 | 6 |
| Complement | COM | 43 | 1 | 3 | 53 | 1 | 3 | 33 | 2 | 5 | 73 | 1 | 5 | 63 | 2 | 6 |
| Negate (2's Complement) | NEG | 40 | 1 | 3 | 50 | 1 | 3 | 30 | 2 | 5 | 70 | 1 | 5 | 60 | 2 | 6 |
| Rotate Left Thru Carry | ROL | 49 | 1 | 3 | 59 | 1 | 3 | 39 | 2 | 5 | 79 | 1 | 5 | 69 | 2 | 6 |
| Rotate Right Thru Carry | ROR | 46 | 1 | 3 | 56 | 1 | 3 | 36 | 2 | 5 | 76 | 1 | 5 | 66 | 2 | 6 |
| Logical Shift Left | LSL | 48 | 1 | 3 | 58 | $!$ | 3 | 38 | 2 | 5 | 78 | 1 | 5 | 68 | 2 | 6 |
| Logical Shift Right | LSR | 44 | 1 | 3 | 54 | 1 | 3 | 34 | 2 | 5 | 74 | 1 | 5 | 64 | 2 | 6 |
| Arithmetic Shift Right | ASR | 47 | 1 | 3 | 57 | 1 | 3 | 37 | 2 | 5 | 77 | 1 | 5 | 67 | 2 | 6 |
| Test for Negative or Zero | TST | 4D | 1 | 3 | 5D | 1 | 3 | 3D | 2 | 4 | 70 | 1 | 4 | 6D | 2 | 5 |
| Multiply | MUL | 42 | 1 | 11 | -- | -- | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |

Table XI - Register/Memory Instructions

|  |  | Addressing Modes |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Immediate |  |  | Direct |  |  | Extended |  |  | Indexed (No Offset) |  |  | Indexed (8-Bit Offset) |  |  | Indexed (16-Bit Offset) |  |  |
| Function | Mnem. | Op Code | Bytes | Cycles | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Op } \\ & \text { Code } \end{aligned}$ |  | Cycles | Op <br> Code | Bytes |  | Op <br> Code | Bytes | Cycles | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Op } \\ & \text { Code } \end{aligned}$ | Brtes | Cycles | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Op } \\ & \text { Code } \end{aligned}$ | Bytes | \% Cycles |
| Load A from Merriory | LDA | A6 | 2 | 2 | B6 | 2 | 3 | C6 | 3 | 4 | F6 | 1 | 3 | E6 | 2 | 4 | D6 | 3 | 5 |
| Load X from Memory | LDX | AE | 2 | 2 | BE | 2 | 3 | CE | 3 | 4 | FE | 1 | 3 | EE | 2 | 4 | DE | 3 | 5 |
| Store A in Memory | STA | - | - | - | B7 | 2 | 4 | C7 | 3 | 5 | F7 | 1 | 4 | E7 | 2 | 5 | D7 | 3 | 6 |
| Store X in Memory | STX | - | - | - | BF | 2 | 4 | CF | 3 | 5 | FF | 1 | 4 | EF | 2 | 5 | DF | 3 | 6 |
| Add Memory to A | ADD | $A B$ | 2 | 2 | BB | 2 | 3 | CB | 3 | 4 | FB | 1 | 3 | EB | 2 | 4 | DB | 3 | 5 |
| Add Memory and Carry to A | ADC | A9 | 2 | 2 | B9 | 2 | 3 | C9 | 3 | 4 | F9 | 1 | 3 | E9 | 2 | 4 | D9 | 3 | 5 |
| Subtract Memory | SUB | A0 | 2 | 2 | B0 | 2 | 3 | CO | 3 | 4 | FO | 1 | 3 | EO | 2 | 4 | D0 | 3 | 5 |
| Subtract Memory from A with Borrow | SBC | A2 | 2 | 2 | B2 | 2 | 3 | C2 | 3 | 4 | F2 | 1 | 3 | E2 | 2 | 4 | D2 | 3 | 5 |
| AND Memory to A | AND | A4 | 2 | 2 | B4 | 2 | 3 | C4 | 3 | 4 | F4 | 1 | 3 | E4 | 2 | 4 | D4 | 3 | 5 |
| OR Memory with A | ORA | AA | 2 | 2 | BA | 2 | 3 | CA | 3 | 4 | FA | 1 | 3 | EA | 2 | 4 | DA | 3 | 5 |
| Exclusive OR Memory with A | EOR | A8 | 2 | 2 | B8 | 2 | 3 | C8 | 3 | 4 | F8 | 1 | 3 | E8 | 2 | 4 | D8 | 3 | 5 |
| Arithmetic Compare A with Memory | CMP | A 1 | 2 | 2 | B1 | 2 | 3 | Cl | 3 | 4 | F1 | 1 | 3 | E1 | 2 | 4 | D1 | 3 | 5 |
| Arithmetic Compare $X$ with Memory | CPX | A3 | 2 | 2 | B3 | 2 | 3 | C3 | 3 | 4 | F3 | 1 | 3 | E3 | 2 | 4 | D3 | 3 | 5 |
| Bit Test Memory with A (Logical Compare) | BIT | A5 | 2 | 2 | B5 | 2 | 3 | C5 | 3 | 4 | F5 | 1 | 3 | E5 | 2 | 4 | D5 | 3 | 5 |
| Jump Unconditional | JMP | - | - | - | BC | 2 | 2 | CC | 3 | 3 | FC | 1 | 2 | EC | 2 | 3 | DC | 3 | 4 |
| Jump to Subroutine | JSR | - | - | - | BD | 2 | 5 | CD | 3 | 6 | FD | 1 | 5 | ED | 2 | 6 | DD | 3 | 7 |

## Appendix D <br> Instruction Set Numerical Listing

This appendix provides a numerical listing of the operation codes used with the CDP6805 CMOS Family. In addition, the corresponding mnemonic, mode, number of MCU/MPU cycles required to complete the instruction, and the number of bytes contained in the instruction are also included. Symbols and abbreviations used in the appendix are listed below.

| INH | Abbreviations for Address Modes <br> Inherent |
| :--- | :--- |
| A | Accumulator |
| X | Index Register |
| IMM | Immediate |
| DIR | Direct |
| REL | Relative |
| BSC | Bit Set/Clear |
| BTB | Bit Test and Branch |
| IX | Indexed (No Offset) |
| IX1 | Indexed, 1-Byte (8-Bit) Offset |
| IX2 | Indexed, 2-Byte (16-Bit) Offset |
| EXT | Extended |

Instruction Set Numerical Listing

| OP CODE | MNEMONIC | MODE | \# CYCLES | \# BYTES |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 00 | BRSETO | BTB | 5 | 3 |
| 01 | BRCLRO | BTB | 5 | 3 |
| 02 | BRSET1 | BTB | 5 | 3 |
| 03 | BRCLR1 | BTB | 5 | 3 |
| 04 | BRSET2 | BTB | 5 | 3 |
| 05 | BRCLR2 | BTB | 5 | 3 |
| 06 | BRSET3 | BTB | 5 | 3 |
| 07 | BRCLR3 | BTB | 5 | 3 |
| 08 | BRSET4 | BTB | 5 | 3 |
| 09 | BRCLR4 | BTB | 5 | 3 |
| OA | BRSET5 | BTB | 5 | 3 |
| OB | BRCLR5 | BTB | 5 | 3 |
| OC | BRSET6 | BTB | 5 | 3 |
| OD | BRCLR6 | BTB | 5 | 3 |
| OE | BRSET7 | BTB | 5 | 3 |
| OF | BRCLR7 | BTB | 5 | 3 |
| 10 | BSETO | BSC | 5 | 2 |
| 11 | BCLRO | BSC | 5 | 2 |
| 12 | BSET1 | BSC | 5 | 2 |
| 13 | BCLR1 | BSC | 5 | 2 |
| 14 | BSET2 | BSC | 5 | 2 |
| 15 | BCLR2 | BSC | 5 | 2 |
| 16 | BSET3 | BSC | 5 | 2 |
| 17 | BCLR3 | BSC | 5 | 2 |
| 18 | BSET4 | BSC | 5 | 2 |
| 19 | BCLR4 | BSC | 5 | 2 |
| 1A | BSET5 | BSC | 5 | 2 |
| 1B | BCLR5 | BSC | 5 | 2 |
| 1 C | BSET6 | BSC | 5 | 2 |
| 1D | BCLR6 | BSC | 5 | 2 |
| 1E | BSET7 | BSC | 5 | 2 |
| 1F | BCLR7 | BSC | 5 | 2 |
| 20 | BRA | REL | 3 | 2 |
| 21 | BRN | REL | 3 | 2 |
| 22 | BHI | REL | 3 | 2 |
| 23 | BLS | REL | 3 | 2 |
| 24 | BCC | REL | 3 | 2 |
| 25 | BCS | REL | 3 | 2 |
| 26 | BNE | REL | 3 | 2 |
| 27 | BEQ | REL | 3 | 2 |
| 28 | BHCC | REL | 3 | 2 |
| 29 | BHCS | REL | 3 | 2 |
| 2A | BPL | REL | 3 | 2 |
| 2B | BMI | REL | 3 | 2 |
| 2C | BMC | REL | 3 | 2 |
| 2D | BMS | REL | 3 | 2 |
| 2E | BIL | REL | 3 | 2 |
| 2F | BIH | REL | 3 | 2 |
| 30 | NEG | DIR | 5 | 2 |
| 33 | COM | DIR | 5 | 2 |
| 34 | LSR | DIR | 5 | 2 |
| 36 | ROR | DIR | 5 | 2 |
| 37 | ASR | DIR | 5 | 2 |

instruction set numerical listing (CONTINUED)

| OP CODE | MNEMONIC | MODE | \# CYCLES | \# BYTES |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 38 | LSL | DIR | 5 | 2 |
| 39 | ROL | DIR | 5 | 2 |
| 3A | DEC | DIR | 5 | 2 |
| 3C | INC | DIR | 5 | 2 |
| 3D | TST | DIR | 4 | 2 |
| 3F | CLR | DIR | 5 | 2 |
| 40 | NEGA | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 42 | MUL* | INH | 11 | 1 |
| 43 | COMA | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 44 | LSRA | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 46 | RORA | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 47 | ASRA | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 48 | LSLA | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 49 | ROLA | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 4A | DECA | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 4 C | INCA | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 4D | TSTA | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 4F | CLRA | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 50 | NEGX | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 53 | COMX | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 54 | LSRX | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 56 | RORX | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 57 | ASRX | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 58 | LSLX | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 59 | ROLX | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 5A | DECX | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 5C | INCX | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 5D | TSTX | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 5F | CLRX | INH | 3 | 1 |
| 60 | NEG | IX1 | 6 | 2 |
| 63 | COM | IX1 | 6 | 2 |
| 64 | LSR | IX1 | 6 | 2 |
| 66 | ROR | IX1 | 6 | 2 |
| 67 | ASR | IX1 | 6 | 2 |
| 68 | LSL | IX1 | 6 | 2 |
| 69 | ROL | IX1 | 6 | 2 |
| 6A | DEC | IX1 | 6 | 2 |
| 6C | INC | IX1 | 6 | 2 |
| 6D | TST | IX1 | 5 | 2 |
| 6 F | CLR | IX1 | 6 | 2 |
| 70 | NEG | IX | 5 | 1 |
| 73 | COM | IX | 5 | 1 |
| 74 | LSR | IX | 5 | 1 |
| 76 | ROR | IX | 5 | 1 |
| 77 | ASR | IX | 5 | 1 |
| 78 | LSL | IX | 5 | 1 |
| 79 | ROL | IX | 5 | 1 |
| 7A | DEC | IX | 5 | 1 |
| 7 C | INC | IX | 5 | 1 |
| 7D | TST | IX | 4 | 1 |
| 7F | CLR | IX | 5 | 1 |
| 80 | RTI | INH | 9 | 1 |
| 81 | RTS | INH | 6 | 1 |
| 83 | SWI | INH | 10 | 1 |

INSTRUCTION SET NUMERICAL LISTING (CONTINUED)

| OP CODE | MNEMONIC | MODE | \# CYCLES | \# BYTES |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 8E | STOP | INH | 2 | 1 |
| 8F | WAIT | INH | 2 | 1 |
| 97 | TAX | INH | 2 | 1 |
| 98 | CLC | INH | 2 | 1 |
| 99 | SEC | INH | 2 | 1 |
| 9A | CLI | INH | 2 | 1 |
| 9 B | SEI | INH | 2 | 1 |
| 9 C | RSF | INH | 2 | 1 |
| 9D | NOP | INH | 2 | 1 |
| 9 F | TXA | INH | 2 | 1 |
| AO | SUB | IMM | 2 | 2 |
| A1 | CMP | IMM | 2 | 2 |
| A2 | SBC | IMM | 2 | 2 |
| A3 | CPX | IMM | 2 | 2 |
| A4 | AND | IMM | 2 | 2 |
| A5 | BIT | IMM | 2 | 2 |
| A6 | LDA | IMM | 2 | 2 |
| A8 | EOR | IMM | 2 | 2 |
| A9 | ADC | IMM | 2 | 2 |
| AA | ORA | IMM | 2 | 2 |
| $A B$ | ADD | IMM | 2 | 2 |
| AD | BSR | IMM | 6 | 2 |
| AE | LDX | IMM | 2 | 2 |
| B0 | SUB | DIR | 3 | 2 |
| B1 | CMP | DIR | 3 | 2 |
| B2 | SBC | DIR | 3 | 2 |
| B3 | CPX | DIR | 3 | 2 |
| B4 | AND | DIR | 3 | 2 |
| B5 | BIT | DIR | 3 | 2 |
| B6 | LDA | DIR | 3 | 2 |
| B7 | STA | DIR | 4 | 2 |
| B8 | EOR | DIR | 3 | 2 |
| B9 | ADC | DIR | 3 | 2 |
| BA | ORA | DIR | 3 | 2 |
| BB | ADD | DIR | 3 | 2 |
| BC | JMP | DIR | 3 | 2 |
| BD | JSR | DIR | 5 | 2 |
| BE | LDX | DIR | 3 | 2 |
| BF | STX | DIR | 4 | 2 |
| CO | SUB | EXT | 4 | 3 |
| C1 | CMP | EXT | 4 | 3 |
| C2 | SBC | EXT | 4 | 3 |
| C3 | CPX | EXT | 4 | 3 |
| C4 | AND | EXT | 4 | 3 |
| C5 | BIT | EXT | 4 | 3 |
| C6 | LDA | EXT | 4 | 3 |
| C7 | STA | EXT | 5 | 3 |
| C8 | EOR | EXT | 4 | 3 |
| C9 | ADC | EXT | 4 | 3 |
| CA | ORA | EXT | 4 | 3 |
| CB | ADD | EXT | 4 | 3 |
| CC | JMP | EXT | 4 | 3 |
| CD | JSR | EXT | 6 | 3 |
| CE | LDX | EXT | 4 | 3 |
| CF | STX | EXT | 5 | 3 |

## INSTRUCTION SET NUMERICAL LISTING (CONTINUED)

| OP CODE | MNEMONIC | MODE | \# CYCLES | \# BYTES |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| D0 | SUB | IX2 | 5 | 3 |
| D1 | CMP | IX2 | 5 | 3 |
| D2 | SBC | IX2 | 5 | 3 |
| D3 | CPX | IX2 | 5 | 3 |
| D4 | AND | IX2 | 5 | 3 |
| D5 | BIT | IX2 | 5 | 3 |
| D6 | LDA | IX2 | 5 | 3 |
| D7 | STA | IX2 | 6 | 3 |
| D8 | EOR | IX2 | 5 | 3 |
| D9 | ADC | IX2 | 5 | 3 |
| DA | ORA | IX2 | 5 | 3 |
| DB | ADD | IX2 | 5 | 3 |
| DC | JMP | IX2 | 5 | 3 |
| DD | JSR | IX2 | 7 | 3 |
| DE | LDX | IX2 | 5 | 3 |
| DF | STX | IX2 | 6 | 3 |
| EO | SUB | IX1 | 4 | 2 |
| E1 | CMP | IX1 | 4 | 2 |
| E2 | SBC | IX1 | 4 | 2 |
| E3 | CPX | IX1 | 4 | 2 |
| E4 | AND | IX1 | 4 | 2 |
| E5 | BIT | IX1 | 4 | 2 |
| E6 | LDA | IX1. | 4 | 2 |
| E7 | STA | IX1 | 5 | 2 |
| E8 | EOR | IX1 | 4 | 2 |
| E9 | ADC | IX1 | 4 | 2 |
| EA | ORA | IX1 | 4 | 2 |
| EB | ADD | IX1 | 4 | 2 |
| EC | JMP | IX1 | 4 | 2 |
| ED | JSR | IX1 | 6 | 2 |
| EE | LDX | IX1 | 4 | 2 |
| EF | STX | IX1 | 5 | 2 |
| F0 | SUB | IX | 3 | 1 |
| F1 | CMP | IX | 3 | 1 |
| F2 | SBC | IX | 3 | 1 |
| F3 | CPX | IX | 3 | 1 |
| F4 | AND | IX | 3 | 1 |
| F5 | BIT | IX | 3 | 1 |
| F6 | LDA | IX | 3 | 1 |
| F7 | STA | IX | 4 | 1 |
| F8 | EOR | IX | 3 | 1 |
| F9 | ADC | IX | 3 | 1 |
| FA | ORA | IX | 3 | 1 |
| FB | ADD | IX | 3 | 1 |
| FC | JMP | IX | 3 | 1 |
| FD | JSR | IX | 5 | 1 |
| FE | LDX | IX | 3 | 1 |
| FF | STX | IX | 4 | 1 |

*Note that the MUL (42) instruction is available only on the CDP68HC05C4 and CDP68HC05D2 Microcomputers.

# Appendix E Instruction Set Cycle-By-Cycle Operation Summary 

Table XII provides a detailed description of the cycle-by-cycle operation for each instruction in the CDP6805 CMOS Family. The table contains information which includes the total number of cycles required to execute the instruction, plus a step-by-step breakdown of each cycle. Except for the CDP6805E2 Microprocessor Unit (MPU), all of the CDP6805 CMOS Family members are Microcomputer Units (MCUs). This means that only the CDP6805E2 has an external address bus, $\mathrm{R} / \overline{\mathrm{W}}$ pin, and data bus. In all others, these are internal to the MCU and are not connected to any external pin(s).

The information contained in this table is useful in comparing actual with expected results, while debugging both software and hardware, during control program execution. The information is categorized in groups according to the addressing mode and number of cycles per instructions.

Table XII - CDP6805 CMOS Family Summary of Cycle-by-Cycle Operation

| Instructions | Cycles | Cycle \# | Address Bus* | R/ $\overline{\mathbf{W}}$ | Data Bus* |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| INHERENT |  |  |  |  |  |
| ASL ASR CLR COM DEC INC LSL LSR NEG ROL ROR TST | 3 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Opcode Next Instruction Opcode Next Instruction |
| CLC CLI NOP RSP SEC SEI TAX TXA | 2 | $2$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Opcode Next Instruction |
| RTS | 6 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \\ & 6 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Stack Pointer <br> Stack Pointer +1 <br> Stack Pointer +2 <br> New Opcode Address | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Opcode Next Instruction <br> Return Address (HI Byte) *** <br> Return Address (LO Byte) * ** <br> Irrelevant Data <br> New Opcode |
| SWI | 10 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \\ & 6 \\ & 7 \\ & 8 \\ & 9 \\ & \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Stack Pointer <br> Stack Pointer - 1 <br> Stack Pointer - 2 <br> Stack Pointer - 3 <br> Stack Pointer - 4 <br> Vector Address \$1FFC** <br> Vector Address \$1FFD** <br> Interrupt Routine Starting Address | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Opcode Next Instruction <br> Return Address (LO Byte) <br> Return Address (HI Byte) <br> Contents of Index Register <br> Contents of Accumulator <br> Contents of CC Register <br> Address of Interrupt Routine <br> (HI Byte) <br> Address of Interrupt Routine <br> (LO Byte) <br> Interrupt Routine First Opcode |
| RTI | 9 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \\ & 6 \\ & 7 \\ & 8 \\ & 9 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Stack Pointer <br> Stack Pointer +1 <br> Stack Pointer +2 <br> Stack Pointer +3 <br> Stack Pointer +4 <br> Stack Pointer +5 <br> New Opcode Address | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Opcode Next Instruction Irrelevant Data <br> Contents of CC Register* ** <br> Contents of Accumulator*** <br> Contents of Index Register*** <br> Return Address (HI Byte) *** <br> Return Address (LO Byte) * ** <br> New Opcode |
| IMMEDIATE |  |  |  |  |  |
| ADC ADD AND BIT CMP CPX EOR LDA LDX ORA SBC SUB | 2 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Operand Data |
| BIT SET/CLEAR |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { BSET } n \\ & \text { BCLR } n \end{aligned}$ | 5 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Address of Operand <br> Address of Operand <br> Address of Operand | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Address of Operand <br> Operand Data <br> Operand Data <br> Manipulated Data |
| BIT TEST AND BRANCH |  |  |  |  |  |
| BRSET n BRCLR $n$ | 5 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Address of Operand <br> Opcode Address + 2 <br> Opcode Address + 2 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Address of Operand <br> Operand Data <br> Branch Offset <br> Branch Offset |

Table XII - CDP6805 CMOS Family Summary of Cycle-by-Cycle Operation (Continued)

| Instructions | Cycles | Cycle \# | Address Bus* | R/ $\bar{W}$ | Data Bus |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| RELATIVE |  |  |  |  |  |
| BCC (BHS) BCS (BLO) BEO BHCC BHCS BHI BIH BIL BLS BMC BMI BMS BNE BPL BRA BRN | 3 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Branch Offset <br> Branch Offset |
| BSR | 6 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \\ & 6 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Subroutine Starting Address <br> Stack Pointer <br> Stack Pointer - 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Branch Offset <br> Branch Offset <br> 1st Subroutine Opcode <br> Return Address (LO Byte) <br> Return Address (HI Byte) |
| DIRECT |  |  |  |  |  |
| JMP | 2 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address Opcode Address + 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Jump Address |
| ADC ADD AND BIT CMP CPX EOR LDA LDX ORA SBC SUB | 3 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Address of Operand | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Address of Operand Operand Data |
| TST | 4 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Address of Operand Opcode Address + 2 | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Address of Operand Operand Data Opcode Next Instruction |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { STA } \\ & \text { STX } \end{aligned}$ | 4 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Address of Operand | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Address of Operand Address of Operand Operand Data |
| ASL ASR CLR COM DEC INC LSL LSR NEG ROL ROR | 5 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Address of Operand <br> Address of Operand <br> Address of Operand | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Address of Operand Current Operand Data Current Operand Data New Operand Data |
| JSR | 5 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Subroutine Starting Address <br> Stack Pointer <br> Stack Pointer - 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | Opcod <br> Subroutine Address (LO Byte) <br> 1st Subroutine Opcode <br> Return Address (LO Byte) <br> Return Address (HI Byte) |
| EXTENDED |  |  |  |  |  |
| JMP | 3 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 2 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Jump Address (HI Byte) <br> Jump Address (LO Byte) * * |
| ADC ADD AND BIT CMP CPX EOR LDA LDX ORA SBC SUB | 4 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 2 <br> Address of Operand | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Address of Operand (HI Byte) <br> Address of Operand (LO Byte) <br> Operand Data |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { STA } \\ & \text { STX } \end{aligned}$ | 5 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 2 <br> Opcode Address + 2 <br> Address of Operand | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Address of Operand (HI Byte) <br> Address of Operand (LO Byte) <br> Address of Operand (L.O Byte) Operand Data |
| JSR | 6 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \\ & 6 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 2 <br> Subroutine Starting Address <br> Stack Pointer <br> Stack Pointer - 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Addr of Subroutine (HI Byte) <br> Addr of Subroutine (LO Byte) <br> 1st Subroutine Opcode <br> Return Address (LO Byte) <br> Return Address (HI Byte) ** |

Table XII - CDP6805 CMOS Family Summary of Cycle-by-Cycle Operation (Continued)

| Instructions | Cycles | Cycle \# | Address Bus* | R/W | Data Bus |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| INDEXED, NO-OFFSET |  |  |  |  |  |
| JMP | 2 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address Opcode Address + 1 | $1$ | Opcode <br> Opcode Next Instruction |
| ADC ADD AND BIT CMP CPX EOR LDA LDX ORA SBC SUB | 3 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address Opcode Address + 1 Index Register | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Opcode Next Instruction <br> Operand Data |
| TST | 4 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Index Register <br> Opcode Address + 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Opcode Next Instruction <br> Operand Data <br> Opcode Next Instruction |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { STA } \\ & \text { STX } \end{aligned}$ | 4 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address Opcode Address + 1 Opcode Address + 1 Index Register | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Opcode Next Instruction Opcode Next Instruction Operand Data |
| ASL ASR CLR COM DEC INC LSL LSR NEG ROL ROR | 5 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Index Register <br> Index Register <br> Index Register | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Opcode Next Instruction <br> Current Operand Data <br> Current Operand Data <br> New Operand Data |
| JSR | 5 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Index Register <br> Stack Pointer <br> Stack Pointer - 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Opcode Next Instruction 1st Subroutine Opcode Return Address (LO Byte) Return Address (HI Byte) |
| INDEXED, 8-BIT OFFSET |  |  |  |  |  |
| JMP | 3 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Offset Offset |
| ADC ADD AND BIT CMP CPX EOR LDA LDX ORA SBC SUB | 4 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Index Register + Offset | $1$ | Opcode <br> Offset <br> Offset <br> Operand Data |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { STA } \\ & \text { STX } \end{aligned}$ | 5 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Index Register + Offset | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 0 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Offset <br> Offset <br> Offset <br> Operand Data |
| TST | 5 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Index Register + Offset <br> Opcode Address + 2 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Offset <br> Offset <br> Operand Data <br> Opcode Next Instruction |
| ASL ASR CLR COM DEC INC LSL LSR NEG ROL ROR | 6 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \\ & 6 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Index Register + Offset <br> Index Register + Offset <br> Index Register + Offset | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Offset <br> Offset <br> Current Operand Data <br> Current Operand Data <br> New Operand Data |
| JSR | 6 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \\ & 6 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Index Register + Offset <br> Stack Pointer <br> Stack Pointer - 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Offset <br> Offset <br> 1st Subroutine Opcode <br> Return Address (LO Byte) <br> Return Address (HI Byte) ** |

Table XII - CDP6805 CMOS Family Summary of Cycle-by-Cycle Operation (Continued)

| Instructions | Cycles | Cycle \# | Address Bus* | R/W | Data Bus |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| INDEXED, 16-BIT OFFSET |  |  |  |  |  |
| JMP | 4 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 2 <br> Opcode Address + 2 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Offset (HI Byte) <br> Offset (LO Byte) <br> Offset (LO Byte) |
| ADC ADD AND BIT CMP CPX EOR LDA LDX ORA SBC SUB | 5 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 2 <br> Opcode Address + 2 <br> Index Register + Offset | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Offset (HI Byte) <br> Offset (LO Byte) <br> Offset (LO Byte) <br> Operand Data |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { STA } \\ & \text { STX } \end{aligned}$ | 6 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \\ & 6 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 2 <br> Opcode Address + 2 <br> Opcode Address + 2 <br> Index Register + Offset | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Offset (HI Byte) <br> Offset (LO Byte) <br> Offset (LO Byte) <br> Offset (LO Byte) <br> New Operand Data |
| JSR | 7 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \\ & 4 \\ & 5 \\ & 6 \\ & 7 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode Address <br> Opcode Address + 1 <br> Opcode Address + 2 <br> Opcode Address + 2 <br> Index Register + Offset <br> Stack Pointer <br> Stack Pointer - 1 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 1 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ | Opcode <br> Offset (HI Byte) <br> Offset (LO Byte) <br> Offset (LO Byte) <br> 1st Subroutine Opcode <br> Return Address (LO Byte) <br> Return Address (HI Byte) * * |

Table XII－CDP6805 CMOS Family Summary of Cycle－by－Cycle Operation（Concluded）

| RESET AND INTERRUPT |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Instructions | Cycles | Cycle \＃ | Address Bus＊ | Reset | R／W | Data Bus＊ |
| Hardware Reset | 5 |  | \＄1FFE＊＊ | 0 | 1 | Irrelevant Data |
|  |  |  | \＄1FFE＊＊ | 0 | 1 | Irrelevant Data |
|  |  | 1 | \＄1FFE＊＊ | 1 | 1 | Irrelevant Data |
|  |  | 2 | \＄1FFE＊＊ | 1 | 1 | Irrelevant Data |
|  |  | 3 | \＄1FFE＊＊ | 1 | 1 | Vector（HI Byte） |
|  |  | 4 | \＄1FFF＊＊ | 1 | 1 | Vector（LO Byte） |
|  |  | 5 | Reset Vector | 1 | 1 | Opcode |
| Power on Reset | 1922 | 1 | \＄1FFE | 1 | 1 | Irrelevant Data |
|  |  | － |  | － | － |  |
|  |  | $\bullet$ | － | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ |  |
|  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$－ | － | $\bullet$ |  |
|  |  | 1919 | \＄1FFE＊＊ | 1 | 1 | Irrelevant Data |
|  |  | 1920 | \＄1FFE＊＊＊ | 1 | 1 | Vector（HI Byte） |
|  |  | 1921 | \＄1FFF＊＊ | 1 | 1 | Vector（LO Byte） |
|  |  | 1922 | Reset Vector | 1 | 1 | Opcode |


| HARDWARE INTERRUPTS |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Instructions | Cycles | Cycle \＃ | Address Bus＊ | $\overline{\mathrm{R} \mathrm{Q}}$ | R／प⿳亠丷厂彡 | Data Bus＊ |
|  |  |  | Last Cycle of Previous Instruction | 0 | X | x |
|  |  | 1 | Next Opcode Address | 0 | 1 | Irrelevant Data |
|  |  | 2 | Next Opcode Address | $x$ | 1 | Irrelevant Data |
|  |  | 3 | Stack Pointer | x | 0 | Return Addr．（LO Byte） |
| $\overline{\mathrm{TRO}}$ Interrupt | 10 | 4 | Stack Pointer－ 1 | X | 0 | Return Addr．（HI Byte） |
| （Vector HI：\＄1FFA，＊＊ |  | 5 | Stack Pointer－ 2 | X | 0 | Contents Index Reg |
| Vector LO：\＄1FFB＊＊） |  | 6 | Stack Pointer－ 3 | X | 0 | Contents Accumulator |
| Timer Interrupt（Vector HI： |  | 7 | Stack Pointer－ 4 | $x$ | 0 | Contents CC Register |
| \＄1FF9＊＊Vector LO： |  | 8 | \＄1FFA＊＊ | X | 1 | Vector（HI Byte） |
| \＄1FF8＊＊） |  | 9 | \＄1FFB＊＊ | $x$ | 1 | Vector（LO Byte） |
|  |  | 10 | $\overline{\mathrm{TQ}}$ Vector | X | 1 | Interrupt Routine First |

＊Except for the CDP6805E2 MPU，the address bus，R $\overline{\mathrm{W}}$ ，and data bus are internal to the device．
＊＊All values given are for devices with 13－bit program counters（e．g．，CDP6805E2 and CDP6805G2）．For devices with 11－bit program counters（CDP6805F2），the HI byte is＂ 07 ＂instead of＂ 1 F ＂．

X indicates don＇t care．
＊＊＊On the CDP6805E2 the data bus is external and，since the stack is on－chip，data on the external bus is ignored during the RTI and RTS instructions．

## Appendix F Instruction Set Opcode Map

The opcode map contains a summary of opcodes used with the CDP6805 CMOS Family. The map is outlined by two sets ( $0-\mathrm{F}$ ) of hexadecimal numbers: one horizontal and one vertical. The horizontal set represents the MSD and the vertical set represents the LSD. For example, a 25 opcode represents a BCS (located at the 2 and 5 coordinates) used in the relative mode. There are five different opcodes for COM, each in a different addressing mode (direct; accumulator; indexed; indexed, one-byte offset; and indexed, two-byte offset). A legend is provided, as part of the map, to show the information contained in each coordinate square. The legend represents the coordinates for opcode F0 (SUB). Included in the legend is the opcode binary equivalent, the number of execution cycles required for the CDP 6805 CMOS Family, the required number of bytes, the address mode, and the mnemonic.

TABLE XIII - Instruction Set Opcode Map

|  | Bit Manipulation |  | Branch | Read/Modify/Write |  |  |  |  | Control |  | Register/Memory |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | BTB | BSC | REL | DIR | INH(A) | INH(X) | IX1 | IX | INH | INH | IMM | DIR | EXT | IX2 | 1X1 | IX |  |
| Low | $\begin{gathered} 0 \\ 0000 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ 0001 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 2 \\ 0010 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ 0011 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 4 \\ 0100 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ 0101 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 6 \\ 0110 \end{gathered}$ | ${ }_{0111}$ | $\begin{gathered} 8 \\ 1000 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 9 \\ 1001 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { A } \\ 1010 \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \mathrm{B} \\ 1011 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { C } \\ 100 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { D } \\ 1101 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 1110 \\ 1 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \mathrm{F} \\ 1111 \end{gathered}$ | $\mathrm{Hi}^{\mathrm{Hi}}$ |
| $0000$ | $\begin{array}{r} { }^{\text {BRSETO }} \\ \text { BTB } \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \\ \hline{ }_{2}{ }^{5 S E T O} \\ \text { BSC } \end{array}$ | ${ }_{2}{ }_{2}{ }^{3 R A}{ }^{3}$ | ${ }_{2} \mathrm{NEG}_{\mathrm{DIR}}{ }^{5}$ | ${ }_{1}{ }^{\text {NEGAA }}{ }^{3}{ }^{3}$ | ${ }_{1}{ }^{\text {NEGX }}{ }^{3}{ }^{3}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|} \hline & \\ \hline & \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }^{\text {NEG }}{ }^{5}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|r\|} \hline & 9 \\ \hline & \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | $\begin{array}{\|cc\|} \hline & { }^{2} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $2_{2} \text { SUB }^{3}{ }^{3}$ | ${ }_{3} \text { SUB }_{\text {EXT }}{ }^{4}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l} \hline & \text { SUB }_{1 \times 2}^{5} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \\ \hline{ }^{\text {SUB }}{ }_{1 \times 1} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\left.\right\|_{1}{ }^{\text {SUBb }}{ }^{3}$ | ${ }_{0}^{0} 000$ |
| $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ 0001 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{r} { }_{3} \begin{array}{r} \text { BRCLRO } \\ \text { BTB } \end{array} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|} \hline \text { BCLRO } \\ \hline 2 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }_{2} \mathrm{BRN}^{3}{ }^{3}$ |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|} \hline & 6 \\ \hline & \text { RTS } \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | $\begin{array}{\|c\|c\|} \hline & \\ \hline & \mathrm{CMP} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $2 \mathrm{CMP}^{3}$ | ${ }_{3} \mathrm{CMP}^{4}{ }^{4}$ | ${ }_{3}{ }^{\text {CMP }}{ }^{5}{ }^{5}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \mathrm{CMP}^{4} \\ \mathrm{IX}_{1} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }_{1}{ }^{\text {CMP }} \begin{array}{r} 3 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ 0001 \end{gathered}$ |
| $\underset{0010}{2}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|r\|} \hline \text { BRSET1 } \\ \text { BTB } \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|} \hline \\ \hline \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }_{2}{ }^{\mathrm{BHI}}{ }^{3}$ |  | ${ }_{1} \mathrm{MUL}^{\text {inH }}{ }^{11}$ |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{array}{\|lll} \hline & & \\ \hline & & \\ \hline & & \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $2 \mathrm{SBC}^{3}{ }^{3}$ |  | $3_{3}{ }^{\text {SBC }} \begin{array}{r} \text { 1X2 } \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | SBC ${ }^{\text {I }}$ + ${ }^{3}$ | $0010$ |
| $\stackrel{3}{3}$ |  |  | $2{ }_{2} \quad{ }^{3}{ }^{3}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \mathrm{C}^{\mathrm{COM}}{ }^{5} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\boldsymbol{c}^{\text {COMA }}{ }^{3}{ }^{3}$ | ${ }_{1} \mathrm{COMX}^{3}{ }_{\mathrm{NH}}$ | $\begin{array}{\|ll\|} \hline{ } \operatorname{com}^{6} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r} \hline \\ \hline \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \\ \hline \end{array}{ }^{\text {SWI }}{ }^{10}$ |  | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|} \hline & { }^{\text {CPX }} \\ \hline & \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }_{2} \mathrm{CPX}_{\mathrm{DIR}}{ }^{3}$ | ${ }_{3}{ }^{\text {CPX }^{4}}{ }^{4}$ | ${ }_{3}{ }^{\mathrm{CPX}} \begin{array}{r} 5 \\ \hline 1 \times 2 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \\ C P X_{1 \times 1} \end{gathered}$ | $\mathrm{C}_{1} \mathrm{CPX}^{3} \mathrm{x}$ | $\begin{gathered} 3 \\ 0011 \end{gathered}$ |
| $\begin{gathered} 4 \\ 0100 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { BRSET2 } \\ 3 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|} \hline \\ \hline \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|r\|} \hline{ }^{3} \\ 2 & \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\operatorname{LSR}_{\text {DIR }}{ }^{5}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|} \hline{ }^{\text {LSRA }} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }_{1} \operatorname{LSRX}^{3}{ }^{3} \mathrm{NH}$ | $\begin{array}{\|lll\|} \hline & & \\ \hline & \text { LSR } & \\ \hline & & 1 \times 1 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }^{\text {LSR }}$ [ ${ }^{5} \mathrm{x}$ |  |  | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|} \hline & \\ & { }^{2} \\ \hline & \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|} \hline & { }^{3} \\ 2 & \mathrm{DIR}^{2} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|} \hline & { }^{4} \\ \hline & \text { EXT } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \\ \hline \end{array}{ }^{5}{ }^{5} \quad 1 \times 2$ |  | $$ | ${ }_{0100}^{4}$ |
| $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ 0101 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|r\|} \hline \text { BRCLR2 } \\ 3 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r} \hline \text { BCLR2 } \\ \hline \quad \text { BSC } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|c\|} \hline{ }^{3}{ }^{3} \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{array}{\|lll} \hline & & \\ \hline & \mathrm{BIT} & \\ \hline & \mathrm{IMM} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|} \hline & 3 \\ 2 & \text { BIT } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $$ | $\begin{array}{\|lr} \hline & \\ \hline & \text { BIT } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $$ | ${ }_{1}{ }^{\text {BIT }}{ }^{\text {IX }}$ | $\begin{gathered} 5 \\ 0101 \end{gathered}$ |
| $\begin{gathered} 6 \\ 0110 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|r\|} \hline \text { BRSET3 } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r} \hline 5 \\ \hline \text { BSET3 } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|r\|} \hline & 3 \\ 2 & \mathrm{REL}^{3} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|} \hline \\ \hline{ }^{\text {ROR }} \begin{array}{r} 5 \\ \hline \end{array} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|} \hline \text { RORA } \\ \text { INH } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|} \hline \text { RORX } \\ \text { INH } \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | $\begin{array}{ll} \hline \text { ROR } & 5 \\ & 1 \times \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  |  | $\begin{array}{\|rr\|} \hline & 2 \\ \hline & { }^{\text {LDA }} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|} \hline & { }^{3} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|} \hline & 5 \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | ${ }_{1}{ }^{\text {LDA }}{ }^{3}$ | $\begin{gathered} 6 \\ 0110 \end{gathered}$ |
| $0171$ | $\begin{array}{\|c}  \\ \hline{ }_{3} \begin{array}{r} \text { BRCLR3 } \\ \text { BTB } \end{array} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|} \hline \text { BCLR3 } \\ \hline \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|r\|} \hline & 3 \\ 2 \quad \mathrm{BEL} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|r\|} \hline & 5 \\ 2 & { }^{\text {ASIR }} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|c\|} \hline{ }^{3} \\ \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }_{1}{ }^{\text {ASRX }}{ }^{3}{ }^{3}$ | $\begin{array}{\|lll} \hline & & 6 \\ & & \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|lll} \hline & & 5 \\ \hline & & \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \\ \\ \hline \end{array}{ }^{\text {TAX }}{ }^{2} \mathrm{NH}^{2}$ |  | $\begin{array}{\|c\|c\|} \hline & { }^{4} \\ 2 & \text { DIR } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \\ \hline \end{array}{ }^{\text {STA }} \text { EXT }$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|l\|} \hline & & \\ \hline & \text { STA } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|c\|} \hline & { }^{3} \text { STA } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | STA ${ }^{4}$ | ${ }_{0}^{7} 111$ |
| $\begin{gathered} 8 \\ 1000 \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r} 5 \\ \hline \text { BRSET4 } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r} 5 \\ \hline \text { BSET4 } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }_{2} \begin{gathered} \mathrm{BHCC}^{3} \\ \mathrm{REL} \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $2{ }^{2} \quad{ }^{5}$ | ${ }^{\text {LSLA }^{3}}{ }^{3}$ | ${ }_{1} \operatorname{LSLX}^{\text {INH }}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \\ \hline \end{array}{ }^{6}$ | $\begin{array}{r} \hline \text { LSL } \\ \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \\ \hline \end{array}{ }^{3}{ }^{3}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { EOR }{ }^{4} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c}  \\ \hline \end{array}{ }^{\text {EOR }} \begin{array}{r} 5 \\ 1 \times 2 \end{array}$ |  | EOR ${ }^{3}$ | $\begin{gathered} 8 \\ 1000 \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |
| $\begin{gathered} 9 \\ 1001 \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |  | $\begin{array}{\|r\|} \hline \text { BCLR4 } \\ \hline \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }_{2}{ }^{\text {BHCS }}{ }^{3}$ | $2_{2} \mathrm{ROL}_{\mathrm{DIR}}^{5}$ | ${ }^{2} \begin{array}{r} \text { ROLA } \\ \text { iNH } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\mathrm{C}_{1} \mathrm{ROLX}_{\mathrm{INH}}^{3}$ | $$ | $\begin{array}{\|r}  \\ \hline \mathrm{ROL}^{5} \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|} \hline & \\ \hline & \mathrm{SEC}_{\mathrm{NH}} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|r\|} \hline & { }^{2} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }_{2} \quad \mathrm{ADC}_{\mathrm{DIR}}{ }^{3}$ | ${ }_{3}{ }^{3}{ }^{\text {ADC }} \begin{array}{r} 4 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }_{3} \quad{ }^{A D C} \begin{array}{r} 5 \\ \hline 1 \times 2 \end{array}$ | ${ }_{2} \quad{ }_{2}{ }^{1}{ }^{4}$ |  | $\underset{1001}{9}$ |
| $\begin{gathered} \text { A } \\ 1010 \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r} 5 \\ \hline \text { BRSET5 } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r} 5 \\ \hline \text { BSET5 } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \\ \hline \quad \mathrm{BPL} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $2{ }_{2}{ }^{\mathrm{DEC}}{ }^{\mathrm{DIR}}$ | ${ }_{1} \mathrm{DECA}^{3}{ }^{3} \mathrm{NH}$ | $\mathrm{DECX}^{\mathrm{INH}}$ | $\begin{array}{\|lll} \hline & & \\ \hline & & \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\text { DEC } \begin{array}{r} 5 \\ \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \\ \\ \\ \\ \mathrm{CLI}^{2} \\ \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|r\|} \hline & 2 \\ \hline \text { ORA }{ }^{\prime}{ }^{2} M \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|r\|} \hline & \text { ORA }^{3} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|r\|} \hline & 4 \\ 3 \quad \text { ORA } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }_{3} \text { ORA }^{5}{ }^{5}$ | $\begin{array}{rr} \hline \text { ORA }_{1 \times 1} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { ORA }{ }^{3} \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { A } \\ 1010 \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |
| $\begin{gathered} \text { B } \\ 1011 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r} \hline{ }^{\text {BRCLR5 }}{ }^{5} \\ \text { BTB } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r} \hline \text { BCLR5 } \\ \hline \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \\ \hline \quad \mathrm{BMI} \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\begin{array}{\|ll\|} \hline & \\ \hline & \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | ${ }_{2}{ }_{2}{ }^{\text {ADD }}{ }^{3}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \\ \hline \end{array}{ }^{4} \begin{array}{r} \text { EXT } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }_{3}{ }_{3}{ }^{\text {ADD }} \begin{array}{r} \text { IX2 } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{r} 4 \\ \hline A D D{ }^{4} \times 1 \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | $\begin{gathered} \text { B } \\ 1011 \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |
| $\underset{1100}{C}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \hline \text { BRSET6 } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r} \hline 5 \\ \hline \text { BSET6 } \\ \hline \text { BSC } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }_{2} \mathrm{BMC}_{\mathrm{REL}}{ }^{3}$ | $2{ }_{2}{ }^{I N C^{5}} \begin{array}{r} 5 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }_{1}{ }^{\text {INCA }}{ }^{3}$ | ${ }_{1}{ }^{\mathrm{INCX}}{ }_{\mathrm{INH}}{ }^{3}$ | $\begin{array}{\|lll} \hline & & \\ \hline & \text { INC } & \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|} \hline & \\ \hline & \text { INC } \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | ${ }^{2} \mathrm{RSP}^{2}{ }^{2}$ |  | $2{ }^{2}{ }^{\text {JMP }}{ }^{2}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|c\|c\|} \hline & { }^{3} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|ll} \hline & \\ \hline & \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }^{2} \mathrm{MP} \begin{array}{r} 3 \\ \mathrm{IX} 1 \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|} \hline & \\ \hline & \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} c \\ 1100 \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |
| $\begin{gathered} \mathrm{D} \\ 1101 \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { BRCLR6 } \\ 3 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|c\|} \hline & { }^{\mathrm{BM}}{ }^{3} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|c\|} \hline & { }^{4}{ }^{\text {TST }} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $$ | ${ }^{2}{ }_{1}^{\text {TSTX }}{ }^{3}{ }^{3}$ | $$ | $$ |  | $\begin{array}{\|rr} \hline \mathrm{NOP}^{2} & 2 \\ & \mathrm{INH} \end{array}$ | $2{ }_{2}{ }^{\mathrm{BSR}} \mathrm{REL}^{6}$ | $2{ }_{2}{ }^{\mathrm{JSR}}{ }^{5}{ }^{5}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|c\|} \hline & 6 \\ 3 & { }^{\text {JSR }} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $3_{3}{ }^{\text {JSR }} \begin{array}{r} 7 \times 2 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{ll} \hline \text { JSR } & 6 \\ & { }^{1} \times 1 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { JSR } \begin{array}{r} 5 \\ \\ \hline \end{array}{ }^{1} 8 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} D \\ 1101 \\ \hline 1 \end{gathered}$ |
| $\underset{1110}{\mathrm{E}}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r} 5 \\ \hline{ }_{3} \begin{array}{r} \text { BRSET7 } \\ \text { BTB } \end{array} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{r} \text { BSET7 } \\ 2 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|c\|} \hline & 3 \\ 2 & \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  |  |  |  |  | ${ }_{1}{ }^{\text {STOP }^{2}}{ }^{2}$ |  | $\begin{array}{\|r\|r\|} \hline{ }^{2} & { }^{2} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }_{2} \operatorname{LDX}^{3}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|} \hline{ }^{2}{ }^{4}{ }^{4} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $3_{3} \quad{ }^{\text {LDX }}{ }^{5}$ | $2_{2} \quad{ }^{201}{ }^{4}$ | $\mathrm{C}_{1}^{\mathrm{LDX}} \quad{ }^{3}$ | $\underset{1110}{\mathrm{E}}$ |
| $\underset{1111}{F}$ | $\begin{array}{r} { }_{3}^{\text {BRCLR7 }} \begin{array}{c} 5 \\ \text { BTB } \end{array} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|r\|} \hline \\ \hline{ }^{3 C L R 7} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | ${ }_{2} \mathrm{BIH}^{3}{ }^{3}$ | ${ }_{2} \mathrm{CLR}^{5}{ }^{5}$ | ${ }^{2} \mathrm{CLRA}^{3} \mathrm{INH}$ | $\mathrm{CLRX}_{\mathrm{INH}}{ }^{3}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { CLR } \\ \\ \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\text { CLR }{ }_{\mathrm{Ix}}^{5}$ | ${ }^{2} \text { WAIT }^{2}{ }^{2}$ | $\begin{array}{r} \mathrm{TXA}_{\mathrm{INH}} \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | $\mathrm{STX}_{\mathrm{DIR}}{ }^{4}$ | $3_{3} \quad \text { STX }^{5}{ }^{5}$ | ${ }_{3}{ }^{\text {STX }} \begin{array}{r} \text { IX2 } \end{array}$ | $\text { STX }^{5}{ }^{5}{ }^{5}$ | STX ${ }^{\frac{1 x}{1 \times}}$ | $\underset{1111}{F}$ |

Abbreviations for Address Modes

| INH | Inherent | IX | Indexed (No Offset) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| IMM | Immediate | IX1 | Indexed, 1-Byte (8-Bit) Offset |
| DIR | Direct | IX2 | Indexed, 2-Byte (16-Bit) Offset |
| EXT | Extended | $*$ | Available only on CDP68HC05C4 |
| REL | Relative |  | and CDP68HC05D2 |
| BSC | Bit Set/Clear | A | Accumulator |
| BTB | Bit Test and Branch | X | Index Register |

## Appendix G Address Maps for the CDP6805 CMOS Family

CDP6805E2 Address Map


## CDP6805E3 Address Map



CDP6805F2 Address Map


CDP6805G2 Address Map

*Reads of unused locations undefined.


## CDP68HC05D2 Address Map



# Appendix H ASCII Hexadecimal Code Conversion Chart 

This appendix shows the equivalent alphanumeric characters for the equivalent ASCII hexadecimal code.
ASCII Character Set

MOST SIGNIFICANT CHARACTER


NOTES:
(1) Parity bit in most significant hex digit not included.
(2) Characters in columns 0 and 1 (as well as SP and DEL) are non-printing.
(3) Model 33 Teletypewriter prints codes in columns 6 and 7 as if they were column 4 and 5 codes.

## Index

A
Accumulator $7,9,12,22,28$
Addition ..... 12
Addressing Modes ..... $7,8,12,17,27$
Address Map ..... 7
ALU ..... 9
Architecture ..... $7,8,13$
Arithmetic-Logic Unit (ALU) ..... 9
A Register ..... 13
ASCIī Hexadecimal Code Conversion Chart ..... 122
B
Baud Rate Register ..... 63
Bidirectional Lines ..... 48
Bit ..... 8
Bit Manipulation Addressing Mode ..... 17, 24
Bit Manipulation Instructions ..... $8,20,24,26,28$
Bit Set/Clear Addressing Mode ..... 12, 24, 26
Bit Test ..... 8, 24, 27
Block Move ..... 35
Branch Addressing Mode ..... 27
Branch Instruction ..... $8,12,14,24,28$
Byte ..... 8, 17, 21
Byte Efficiency ..... 8
C
Calculator-Based Microprocessor ..... 7
Carry Bit (C) ..... 15
CDP6805 Compatibility with MC6800 ..... 7, 8
Central Processor Unit (CPU) ..... 7, 9
CMOS Technology ..... 7, 8, 9
Computer-Based Microprocessor ..... 7
Condition-Code Register (CC) ..... $10,12,15$
Control Instruction ..... 17,28
Control Logic ..... 10
Conversion Tables ..... 8
Counter Register ..... 51
CPU ..... 7, 9
Crystal Oscillator ..... 43
D
DAA (Decimal Adjust Accumulator) ..... 35
Data Bus ..... 7
Data Clock Timing ..... 42, 66
Data Format ..... 56
Data Tables ..... 8
Direct Addressing Mode ..... 8, 17, 20
Divide Routine ..... 39, 40, 41
E
Effective Address (EA) ..... 13, 17
Extended Addressing Mode ..... 8, 17, 19
External Bus Description ..... 73
External Clock Connect (ECC) ..... 43, 55
External Interrupt ..... $10,45,46$
External Oscillator Enable (EOE) ..... 55
External Oscillator Input ..... 55
Page Page
F
Features ..... 8H
Half-Carry Bit (H) ..... 15
Hardware Features ..... 7, 9, 42
Hexadecimal Number ..... 17
I
Immediate Addressing Mode ..... $8,17,18,19,28$
Indexed Addressing Mode ..... $8,13,17,21$
Indexed-No Offset-Addressing Mode ..... 21
Indexed-8-Bit Offset-Addressing Mode ..... 22
Indexed-16-Bit Offset-Addressing Mode ..... 23
Index Register (X) ..... 28
Indexing Compatibility ..... 24
Inherent Addressing Mode ..... 17, 18
Initialization ..... 17
Input Capture Register ..... 53
Input/Output (I/O) ..... 48
Instruction Decoder ..... 10
Instructions - Bit Manipulation . . 8, 20, 26, 28, 29

- Branch ..... 24, 28, 29
- Control ..... 17, 28, 29
- Read/Modify/Write . . 13, 17, 20, 28
- Register/Memory . . 13, 19, 20, 21, 28
Instruction Set - Alphanumeric List ..... 28, 97
- Cycle-by-Cycle ..... 108
- Detailed Definition ..... 76
- Funtional Listing ..... 28, 99
- Numerical Listing ..... 28, 103
- Operation Summary ..... 13
- OPCODE Map ..... 114
- Overview ..... 8, 12, 28
Interrupts ..... 10,44
Interrupt Enable ..... 44
Interrupt Mask Bit (I) ..... 15
Interrupt Programming ..... $10,14,44$
I/O Lines ..... $7,8,21,22,42,48$
I/O Options ..... 7
J
Jump Tables ..... 8, 24
Jump Subroutine ..... 12, 14
K
Keyboard Interface ..... 33, 34
Keypad Scan Routine ..... 33, 34
L
LIFO (Last In/ First Out) ..... 14, 34
Load Accumulator (LDA) ..... 7, 12
Logic AND/OR ..... 12
M
Mask Option ..... 43
Master In/ Slave Out (MISO) ..... 67
Master Out/Slave In (MOSI) ..... 66
M
MCU ..... 7, 12
Memory Address ..... 8, 42, 76
Memory Reference Instruction ..... 28
Microcomputer (MCU) ..... $7,10,12$
Microprocessor (MPU) ..... 7, 10, 12
MPU ..... 7, 12
Multiple Nesting ..... 10
Multiple Routine ..... 12, 28, 36, 38
Multiply ..... 36, 37, 38
N
Negative Bit (N) ..... 15
Nesting ..... 14
Noise Immunity ..... 43
0
Operators ..... 76
OPCODE ..... 12, 17
Oscillator, Crystal ..... 10, 43
Oscillator, RC ..... $10,43,55$
Output Compare Register ..... 51, 53
P
Page ..... 8
Parallel I/O Interface ..... 10
Peripherals ..... 7, 42
Permanent Storage (ROM) ..... 21, 43
Pointer ..... 21
Port B Interrupt ..... 47
Port Data Register Accesses ..... 49
Power-Down Reset ..... 43
Power-On-Reset ..... 43, 44
Prescaler ..... 49, 50
Program Counter (PC) ..... $10,12,14,42$
Programmable Timer ..... $10,51,52$
R
RAM ( Random Access Memory) ..... $10,14,21,42,43$
RC Oscillator ..... $10,43,55$
Read/Modify/Write Instructions ..... $13,17,20,28$
Receive Data In ..... 56
Register ..... $7,12,14,58,76$
Register/Memory Instructions ..... $13,19,20,28$
Register Set ..... 12
Relative Addressing Mode ..... $17,24,25$
Reset ..... 14, 43
ROM (Read Only Memory) ..... $7,8,10,21,42,43$
Rotate ..... 12
S
SCI $10,44,46,55,60$
Self Check ..... 10, 74
Serial Clock (SCK) ..... 67
Serial Communications Control Register (SCCR) ..... 59, 61
Page PageSerial Communications Data Register(SCDAT)58
Serial Communications Interface (SCI) ..... $10,44,46,55,60$
Serial Communications Status Register (SCSR) ..... 61, 62, 70
Serial I/ O Software ..... 30
Serial I/O Routine ..... 31, 32
Serial Peripheral Data I/ O Register (SPDR) ..... 72
Serial Peripheral Interface
(SPI) $10,44,46,64,68,72$
Serial Peripheral Control Register (SPCR) ..... 59, 68
Slave Select (SS) ..... 67
Software Applications ..... 30
Software Description ..... 7, 12
Software Interrupt ..... 47
Specific Features of CMOS ..... 8
SPI ..... 72
Stack Array ..... 14
Stack Handling ..... 34
Stack Pointer (SP) ..... 42
Start Bit Detection ..... 57
Stop Instructions ..... 9, 47
Storage-Permanent (ROM) . . 7, 8, 10, 21, 22, 42, 43
Storage-Temporary (RAM) . . 10, 14, 21, 22, 42, 43
Subroutines ..... $8,10,14,22$
Subtract ..... 12
T
Temporary Storage (RAM) .. 10, 14, 21, 22, 42, 43
Timer Control Register (TCR) . ..... 50, 53, 54, 55
Timer/Counter ..... 10,51
Timer Description ..... 49
Timer Input Modes ..... 44, 50
Timer Interrupt ..... 46
Timer, Programmable ..... 42
Timer Status Register (TSR) ..... 54
Timer Test (TIMTST) ..... 73, 74
Timing ..... 10, 42
Timing, Data Clock ..... 42, 66
Timing Diagram ..... 66
Transmit Data Out (TDO) ..... 56, 58
U
"User Friendly" Software ..... 12
W
Wake-Up Feature ..... 10, 56, 59
Wait Instructions ..... 9, 10, 48
X
X-Register (X) ..... $13,14,22$
Z
Zero-Bit (Z) ..... 15,24


## RЕת

## User Manual




[^0]:    *Available only on the CDP68HC05D2

